

PCT

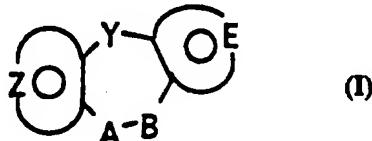
WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07D 495/14, 471/14, 498/14, A61K 31/55		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/22295 (43) International Publication Date: 25 July 1996 (25.07.96)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/01472		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AU, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, HU, IS, JP, KG, KP, KR, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, SG, SI, SK, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 16 January 1996 (16.01.96)		Published <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>	
(30) Priority Data: 08/373,139 17 January 1995 (17.01.95) US			
(71) Applicant: AMERICAN CYANAMID COMPANY [US/US]; Five Giralta Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US).			
(72) Inventors: ALBRIGHT, Jay, Donald; 5 Clifford Court, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). DELOS SANTOS, Efren, Guillermo; 38 Birchwood Terrace, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). DU, Xuemei; 130 Sierra Vista Lane, Valley Cottage, NY 10989 (US). REICH, Marvin, Fred; Apartment 10M, 3 Somerset Drive, Suffern, NY 10901 (US). VENKATESAN, Aranapakam, Mudumbai; 86-35 Queens Boulevard, 4J, Elmhurst, NY 11373 (US).			
(74) Agents: ALICE, Ronald, W.; American Home Products Corporation, Five Giralta Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US) et al.			

(54) Title: TRICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS



(57) Abstract

Tricyclic compound of general formula (I) as defined herein which exhibit antagonist activity at V_1 and/or V_2 receptors and exhibit *in vivo* vasopressin antagonist activity, methods for using such compounds in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water, and process for preparing such compounds.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

Title: TRICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists which are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

2. Background of the Invention

Vasopressin is released from the posterior pituitary either in response to increased plasma osmolarity detected by brain osmoreceptors or decreased blood volume and blood pressure sensed by low-pressure volume receptors and arterial baroreceptors. The hormone exerts its action through two well defined receptor subtypes: vascular V₁ and renal epithelial V₂ receptors. Vasopressin-induced antidiuresis, mediated by renal epithelial V₂ receptors, helps to maintain normal plasma osmolarity, blood volume and blood pressure.

Vasopressin is involved in some cases of congestive heart failure where peripheral resistance is increased. V₁ antagonists may decrease systemic vascular resistance, increase cardiac output and prevent vasopressin induced coronary vasoconstriction. Thus, in

5

conditions with vasopressin induce increases in total peripheral resistance and altered local blood flow, V₁-antagonists may be therapeutic agents. V₁ antagonists may decrease blood pressure, induced hypotensive effects and thus be therapeutically useful in treatment of some types of hypertension.

10

The blockage of V₂ receptors is useful in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of free water. Antidiuresis is regulated by the hypothalamic release of vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) which binds to specific receptors on renal collecting tubule cells. This binding stimulates adenylyl cyclase and promotes the cAMP-mediated incorporation of water pores into the luminal surface of these cells. V₂ antagonists may correct the fluid retention in congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis, nephritic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia.

20

25

30

35

Elevated vasopressin levels occur in congestive heart failure which is more common in older patients with chronic heart failure. In patients with hyponatremic congestive heart failure and elevated vasopressin levels, a V₂ antagonist may be beneficial in promoting free water excretion by antagonizing the action of antidiuretic hormone. On the basis of biochemical and pharmacological effects of the hormone, antagonists of vasopressin are expected to be therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

The following prior art references describe peptide vasopressin antagonists: M. Manning et al..

J. Med. Chem., 35, 382(1992); M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 3895(1992); H. Gavras and B. Lammek, U.S. Patent 5,070,187 (1991); M. Manning and W.H. Sawyer, U.S. Patent 5,055,448(1991) F.E. Ali, U.S. Patent 4,766,108(1988); R.R. Ruffolo et al., Drug News and Perspective, 4(4), 217, (May) (1991). P.D. Williams et al., have reported on potent hexapeptide oxytocin antagonists [J. Med. Chem., 35, 3905(1992)] which also exhibit weak vasopressin antagonist activity in binding to V₁ and V₂ receptors. Peptide vasopressin antagonists suffer from a lack of oral activity and many of these peptides are not selective antagonists since they also exhibit partial agonist activity.

Non-peptide vasopressin antagonists have recently been disclosed, Y. Yamamura et al., Science, 252, 579(1991); Y. Yamamura et al., Br. J. Pharmacol., 105, 787(1992); Ogawa et al., (Otsuka Pharm Co., LTD.) EP 0514667-A1; EPO 382185-A2; WO9105549 and U.S.5,258,510; WO 9404525 Yamanouchi Pharm.Co.,Ltd., WO 9420473; WO 9412476; WO 9414796; Fujisawa Co. Ltd., EP 620216-A1 Ogawa et al., (Otsuka Pharm. Co.) EP 470514A disclose carbostyryl derivatives and pharmaceutical compositions containing the same. Non-peptide oxytocin and vasopressin antagonist have been disclosed by Merck and Co.; M.G. Bock and P.D. Williams, EP 0533242A; M.G. Bock et al., EP 0533244A; J.M. Erb, D.F. Verber, P.D. Williams, EP 0533240A; K. Gilbert et al., EP 0533243A.

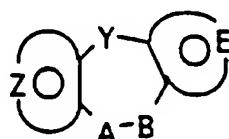
Premature birth can cause infant health problems and mortality and a key mediator in the mechanism of labor is the peptide hormone oxytocin. On the basis of the pharmacological action of oxytocin, antagonists of this hormone are useful in the prevention of preterm labor, B.E. Evans et al., J. Med. Chem. 35, 3919(1992), J. Med. Chem., 36, 3993(1993) and references therein. The compounds of this invention are

antagonists of the peptide hormone oxytocin and are useful in the control of premature birth.

5 The present invention relates to novel tricyclic derivatives which exhibit antagonist activity at V₁ and/or V₂ receptors and exhibit *in vivo* pressin antagonist activity. The compounds also exhibit antagonists activity of oxytocin receptors.

10 SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
This invention relates to new compounds selected from those of the general Formula I:

15



20

wherein Y is a bond or a moiety selected from -(CH₂)-, -CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH₂, -CHN-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -C[N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆)]₂, .

25

25 -CHOCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH(CH₂)_mNH₂; -CHNH(CH₂)_m-NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH(CH₂)_m-N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₆)]₂; -CHNH(CH₂)_m-S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH(CH₂)_m-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆),

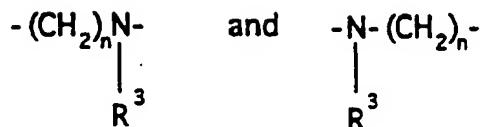
30



35

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), m is an integer of 2 to 6;
A-B is a moiety selected from

5



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 provided that when Y is a bond, n is 2;
and the moiety:

10



15

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, or S; and the moiety:

20



25

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are

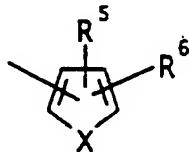
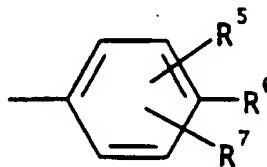
30

35

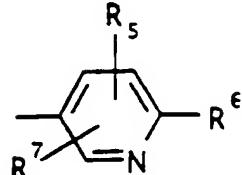
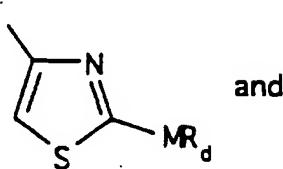
optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen,
or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

5 R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the
group consisting of:

10



15



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃;
R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-
lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

25

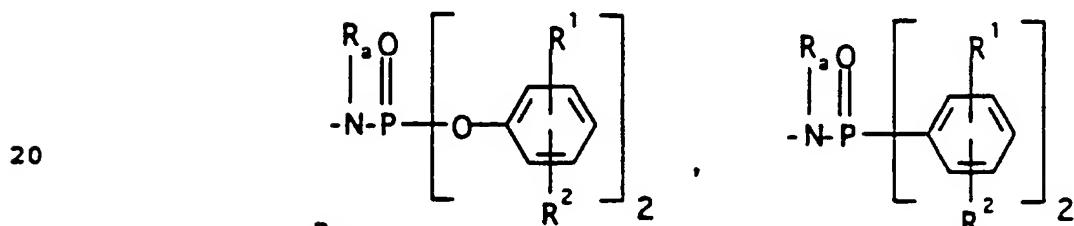
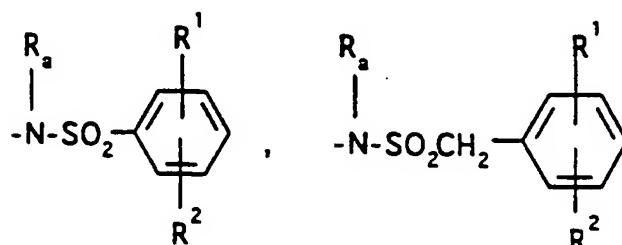
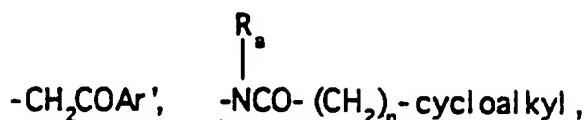
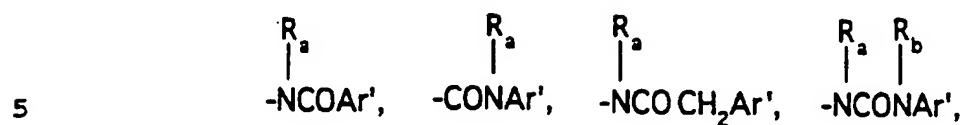
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower
alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected
from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy
and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the
formulae:

25

30

35

-7-



25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

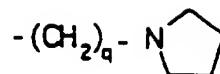
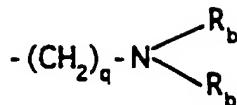
30 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

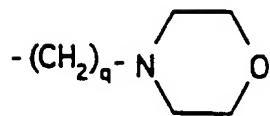
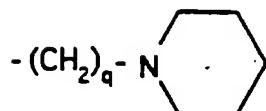
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



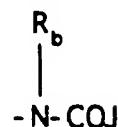
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

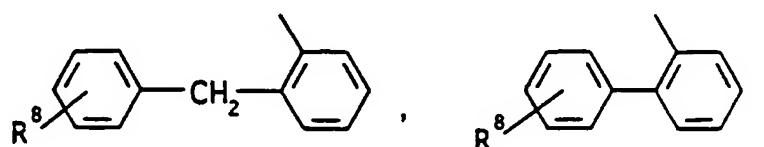
(b) a moiety of the formula:



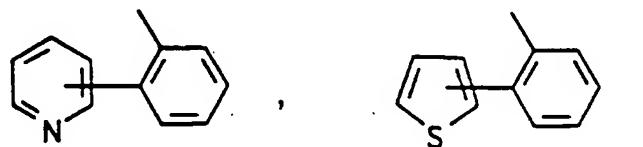
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

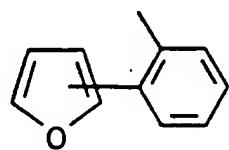
25



30

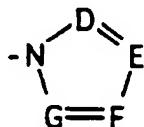


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

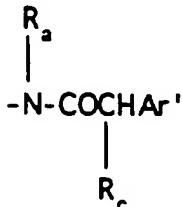
5



10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

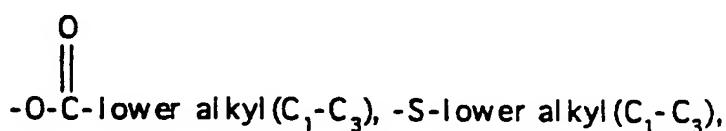


20

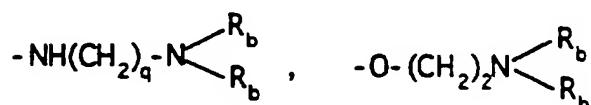
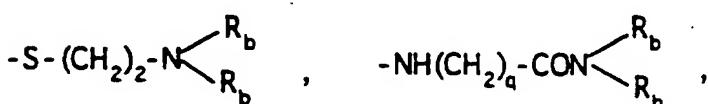
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)

lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), OH,

25



30



35

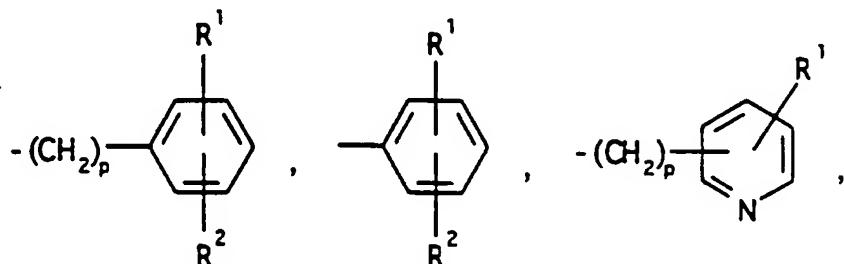
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

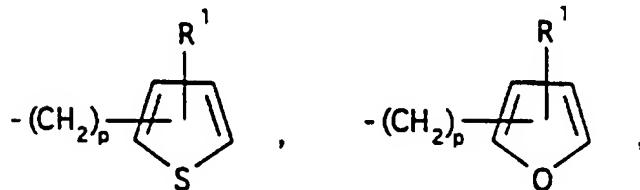
$-M-R_d$

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the moieties:

10



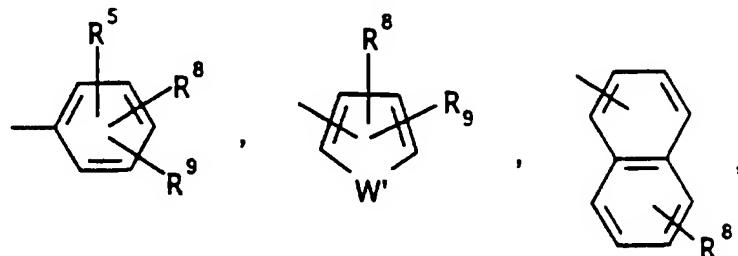
15



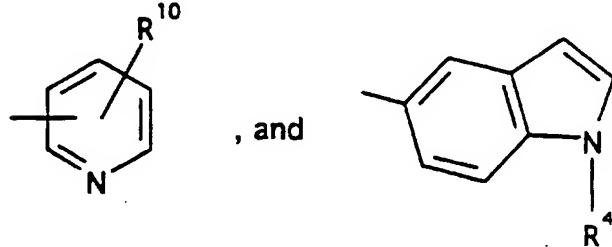
20

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined; wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



30



35

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

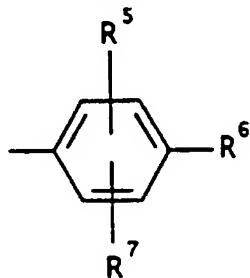
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within the group of the compounds defined by Formula I, certain subgroups of compounds are broadly preferred. Broadly preferred are those compounds wherein R³ is the moiety:



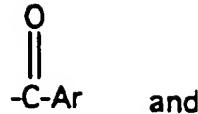
and Ar is selected from the moiety:



wherein R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷ are as hereinbefore defined.

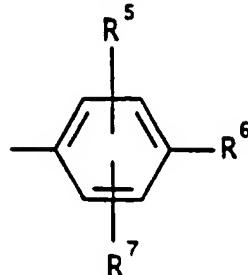
Especially preferred are compounds wherein R³ is the moiety:

5



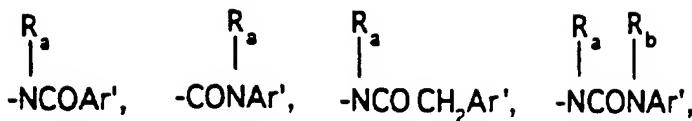
Ar is selected from the moiety:

10

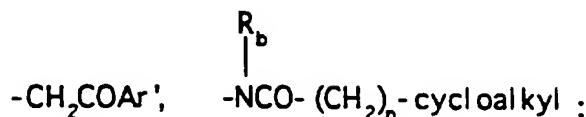


15

R^6 is



20



25

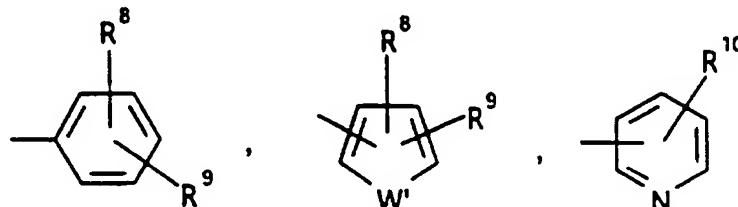
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl;

R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁷ as hereinbefore defined;

and Ar' is selected from the moieties:

30



wherein R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰ and W' are as hereinbefore defined.

35

Also especially preferred are compounds

wherein Y is CH₂, -CHOH, -CHNH₂, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C₁-

C₃), -CHN[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂ and -CHO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

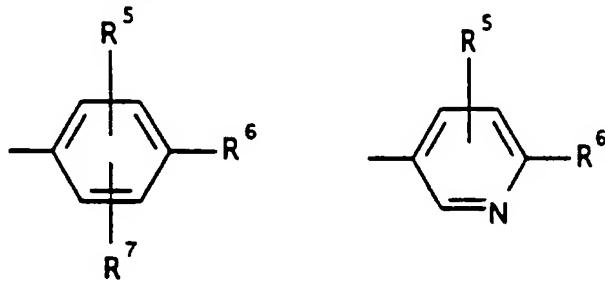
5 and R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ are as hereinbefore defined.

10 The most preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is CH₂, -CHOH, -CHNH₂, -CHNH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -CHN[lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)]₂ and -CHO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃);

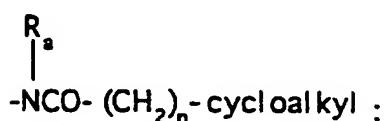
15 R³ is the moiety



20 15 Ar is selected from the moieties:

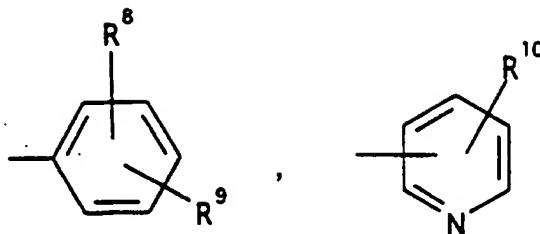


25 20 R⁶ is



(CH₂)_n-cycloalkyl wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁷ are as hereinbefore defined; and Ar' is a moiety:

5



10

wherein R⁸, R⁹, and R¹⁰ are as previously defined.

15

The most highly broadly preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is a bond or CH₂, -CHOH, -CHNH₂, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CHN[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂ and -CHO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), wherein the moiety:



20

is an unsubstituted or substituted thiophene, furan, pyrrole, or pyridine ring; and wherein the moiety:



25

30

is (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N, or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms.

R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁴, R⁵, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, and R¹⁰ are as previously defined;

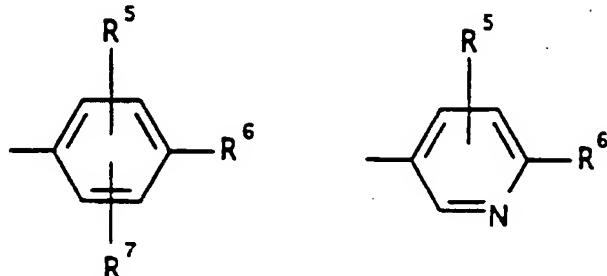
35

R³ is the moiety:

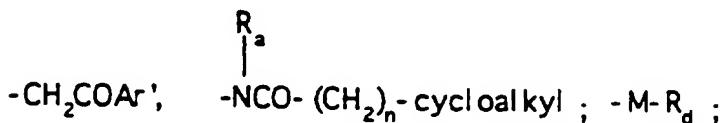
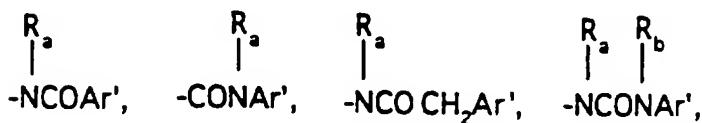
-15-



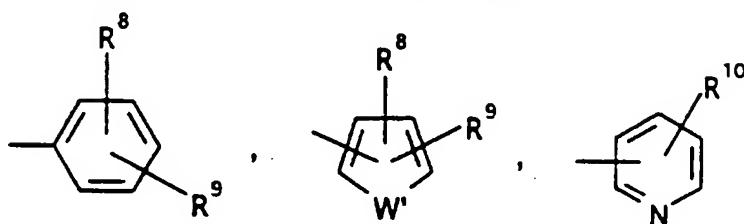
wherein Ar is:



15 and R⁶ is selected from the group



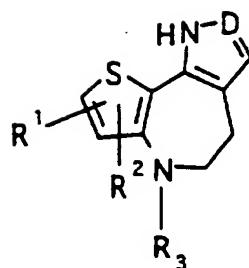
25 where Ar' is selected from the group



30 and W' and cycloalkyl are as previously described.

More particularly preferred are compounds of the formula:

5



10

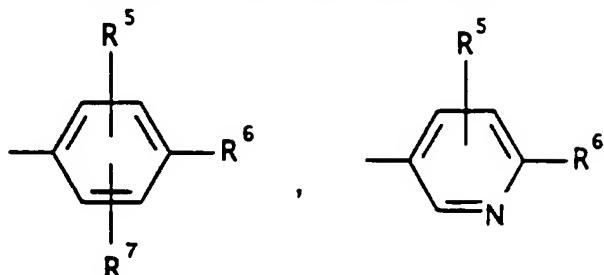
wherein D is -CH or N;
R³ is the moiety:



15

wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

20



R⁶ is

25

$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_a \\ | \\ -\text{NCOAr}', \quad -\text{CONAr}', \quad -\text{NCOCH}_2\text{Ar}', \quad -\text{NCONAr}', \end{array}$

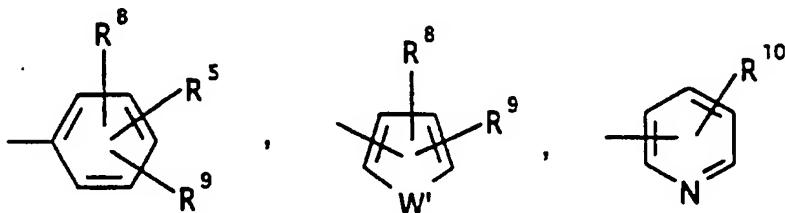
30

$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_a \\ | \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{COAr}', \quad -\text{NCO-}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-cycloalkyl}; \quad -\text{M-R}_d; \end{array}$

and Ar' is selected from the moieties:

35

5

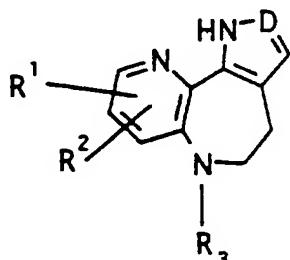


10

wherein R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, cycloalkyl and W' are as hereinbefore described.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formula:

15



20

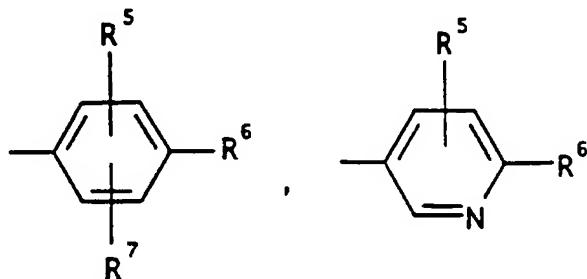
wherein D is -CH or N;
R³ is the moiety:



25

wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

30



35

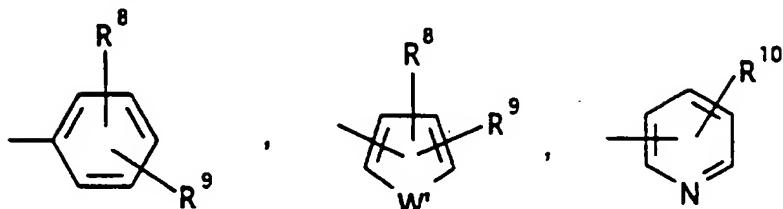
R⁶ is

-18-

5	$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ \\ -NCOAr' \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ \\ -CONAr' \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ \\ -NCOCH_2Ar' \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ \\ -NCONAr' \\ \\ R_b \end{array}$
---	--	--	--	---

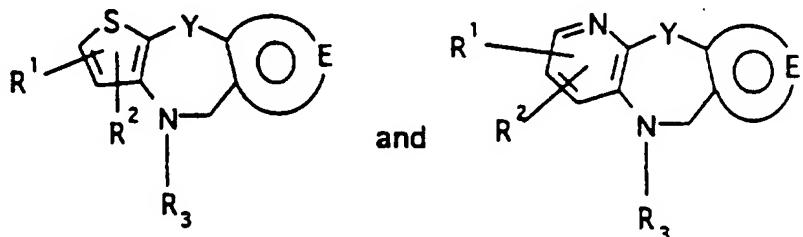
$$-\text{CH}_2\text{COAr}', \quad -\text{NCO}- (\text{CH}_2)_n - \text{cycl oal kyl} ; \quad -\text{M}-\text{R}_d ;$$

10 Ar' is selected from the moieties:



wherein R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, cycloalkyl M, R_d, and W' are as hereinbefore described.

More particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:



30 wherein Y is selected from -CH₂, -CHOH, -CHNH₂, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CHN[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂ and -CHO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and the moiety:



-19-

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

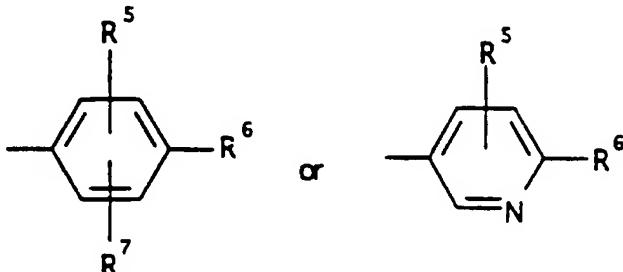
R³ is the moiety:

15



wherein Ar is the moiety:

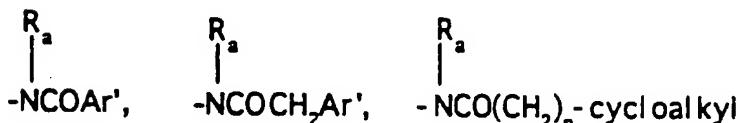
20



25

R⁶ is

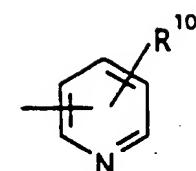
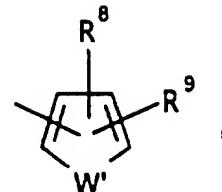
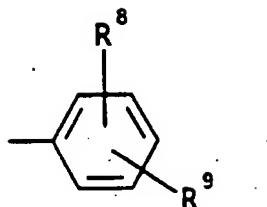
30



wherein R_a is independently selected from hydrogen or -CH₃; Ar' is selected from the moieties:

35

5

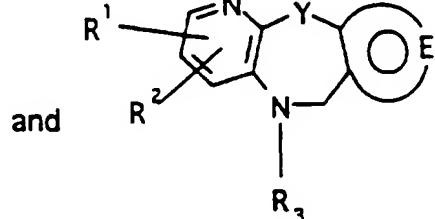
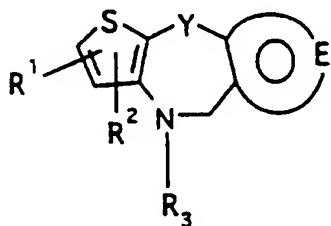


10

wherein R¹, R², R⁵, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, and W' are as hereinbefore described.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:

15



20

wherein Y is selected from -CH₂, -CHOH, -CHNH₂, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CHN[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂ and -CHO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and the moiety:

25



35

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from N or S;

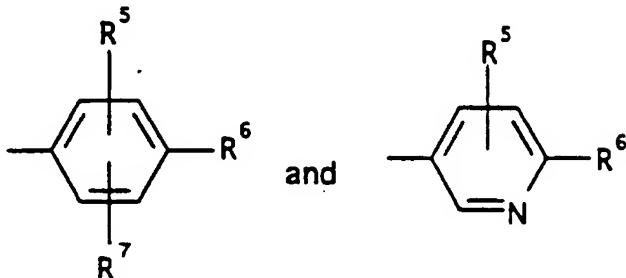
R³ is the moiety:



5

wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

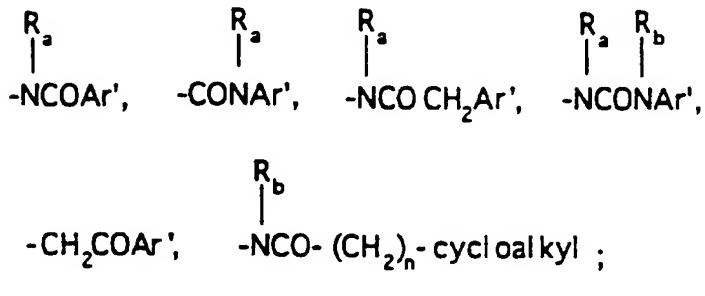
10



15

R⁶ is

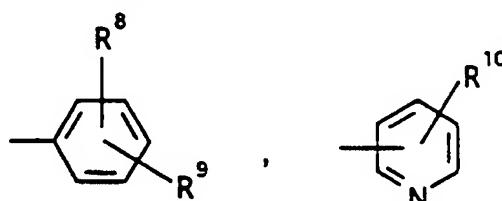
20



25

R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅ and Ar' is selected from the moieties:

30



35

wherein R¹, R², R⁵, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, and R¹⁰ are as hereinbefore defined.

Compounds of this invention may be prepared as shown in Scheme I by reaction of azepine derivatives of Formula 1 with a substituted or unsubstituted 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride 4a or a substituted or unsubstituted 6-aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride 4b to give the inter-

mediate 5a and 5b. Reduction of the nitro group in intermediate 5 gives the 4-aminobenzoyl derivative 6a and the 6-aminonicotinoyl derivative 6b. The reduction of the nitro group in intermediate 5 may be carried out under catalytic reduction conditions (hydrogen-Pd/C; Pd/C-hydrazine-ethanol) or under chemical reduction conditions (SnCl_2 -ethanol; Zn-acetic acid TiCl_3) and related reduction conditions known in the art for converting a nitro group to an amino group. The conditions for conversion of the nitro group to the amino group are chosen on the basis of compatibility with the preservation of other functional groups in the molecule.

Reaction of compounds of Formula 6 with aryl chloride or related activated aryl carboxylic acids in solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine and diisopropylethylamine or pyridine and the like, affords the compounds 8 which are vasopressin antagonists.

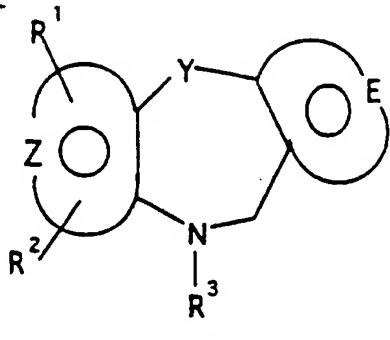
25

30

35

Scheme 1

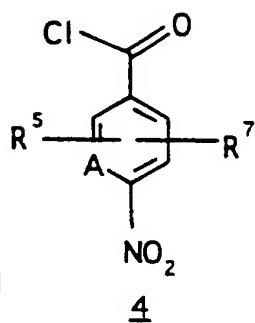
5



10

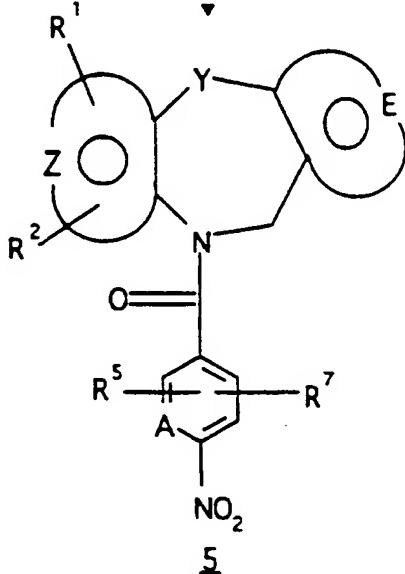
3

15



4a) A=CH
4b) A=N

20



25

5a) A=CH
5b) A=N

30

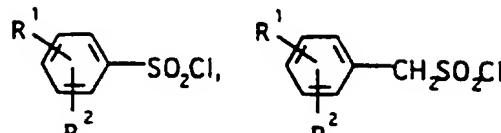
35

Scheme 1 (cont'd)

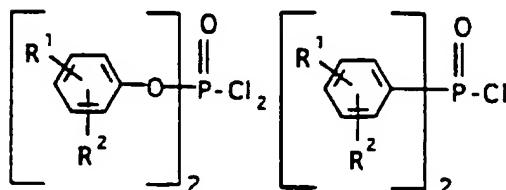
5

- (C₃-C₈)alkyl COCl
 (C₃-C₈)alkyl-O-COCl
 (C₃-C₈)alkenyl-COCl
 (C₃-C₈)alkenyl-O-COCl
 (C₃-C₈)alkyl-SO₂Cl
 (C₃-C₈)alkenyl-SO₂Cl

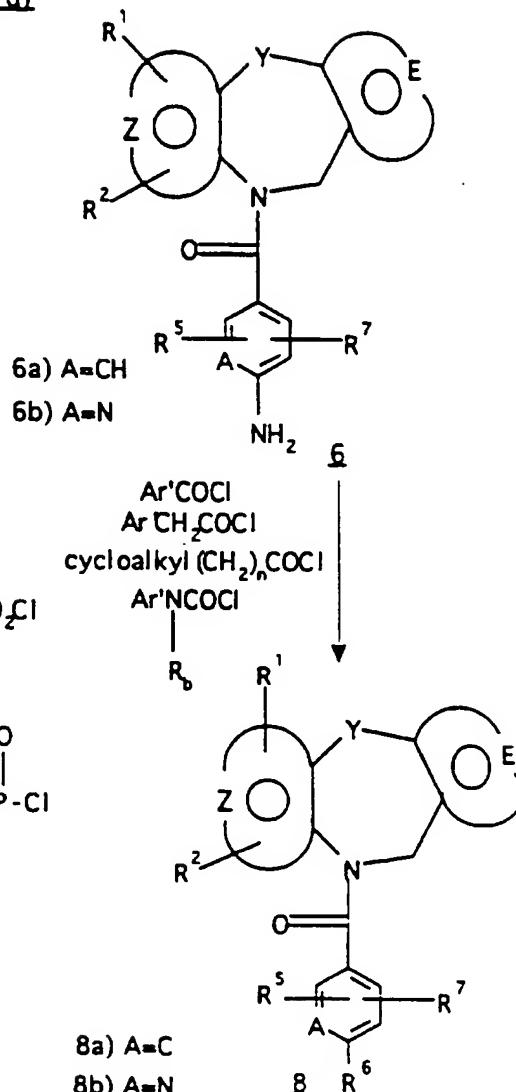
15



20



25



30

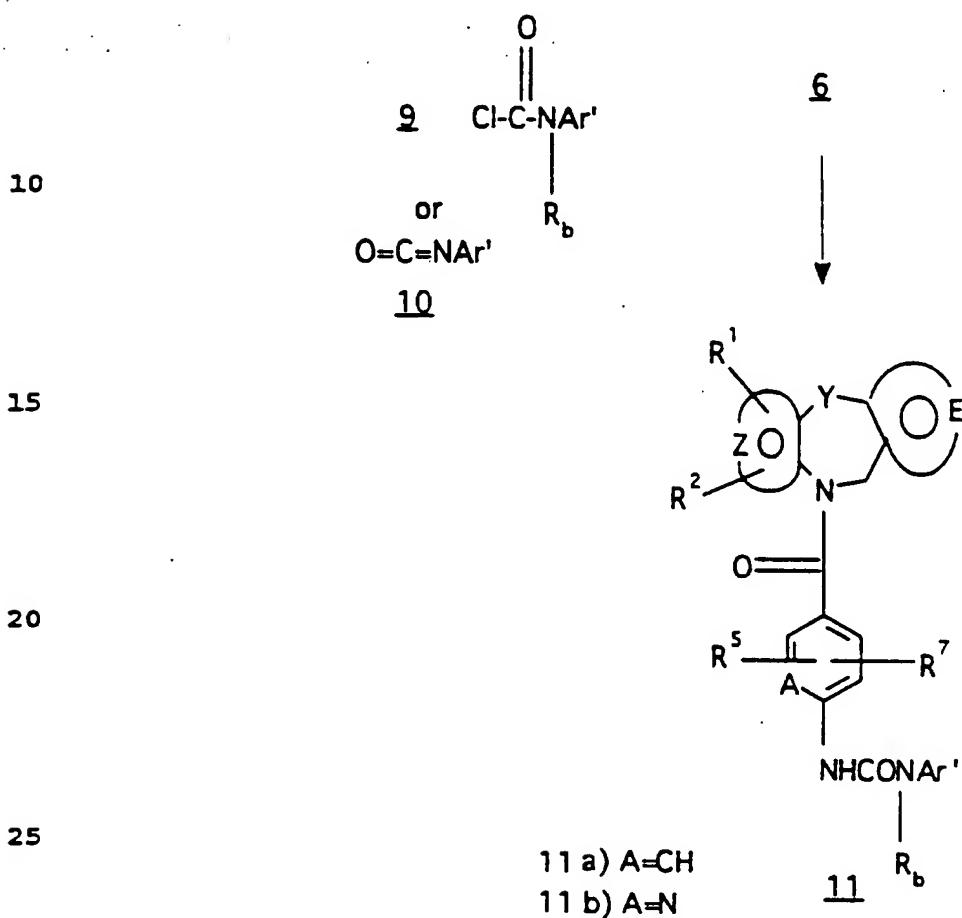
Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 6 with either a carbamoyl derivative 9 or a isocyanate derivative 10 gives compounds (Scheme 2) of Formula 11 which are vasopressin antagonists of Formula I wherein R⁶ is

35



Scheme 2

5

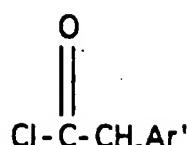


Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 6
 with arylacetic acids, activated as the acid chlorides
 12, anhydrides, mixed anhydrides or activated with known
 activating reagents, gives compounds 13 (Scheme 3).

35

Scheme 3

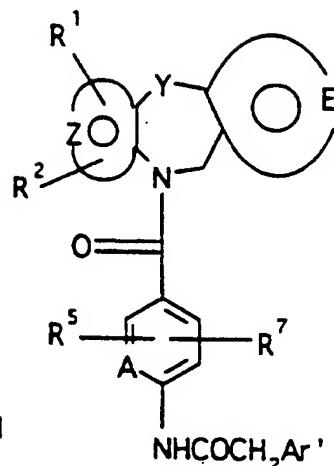
5



10

12

15



20

13 a) A=CH

13 b) A=N

13

25

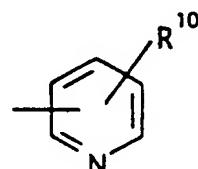
The compounds of Formula I wherein Y, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are as defined and the moiety:

30



is as previously defined and the Ar' moiety is:

35



5

and R¹⁰ is -NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂ may be prepared, as shown in Scheme 4, by reacting the tricyclic derivatives 6a and 6b with a pyridinecarbonyl chloride 14 to give the derivatives 15. The derivatives 15 are reacted with the appropriate mono alkylamines or dialkylamines to give vasopressin antagonists of formulae 16.

10

15

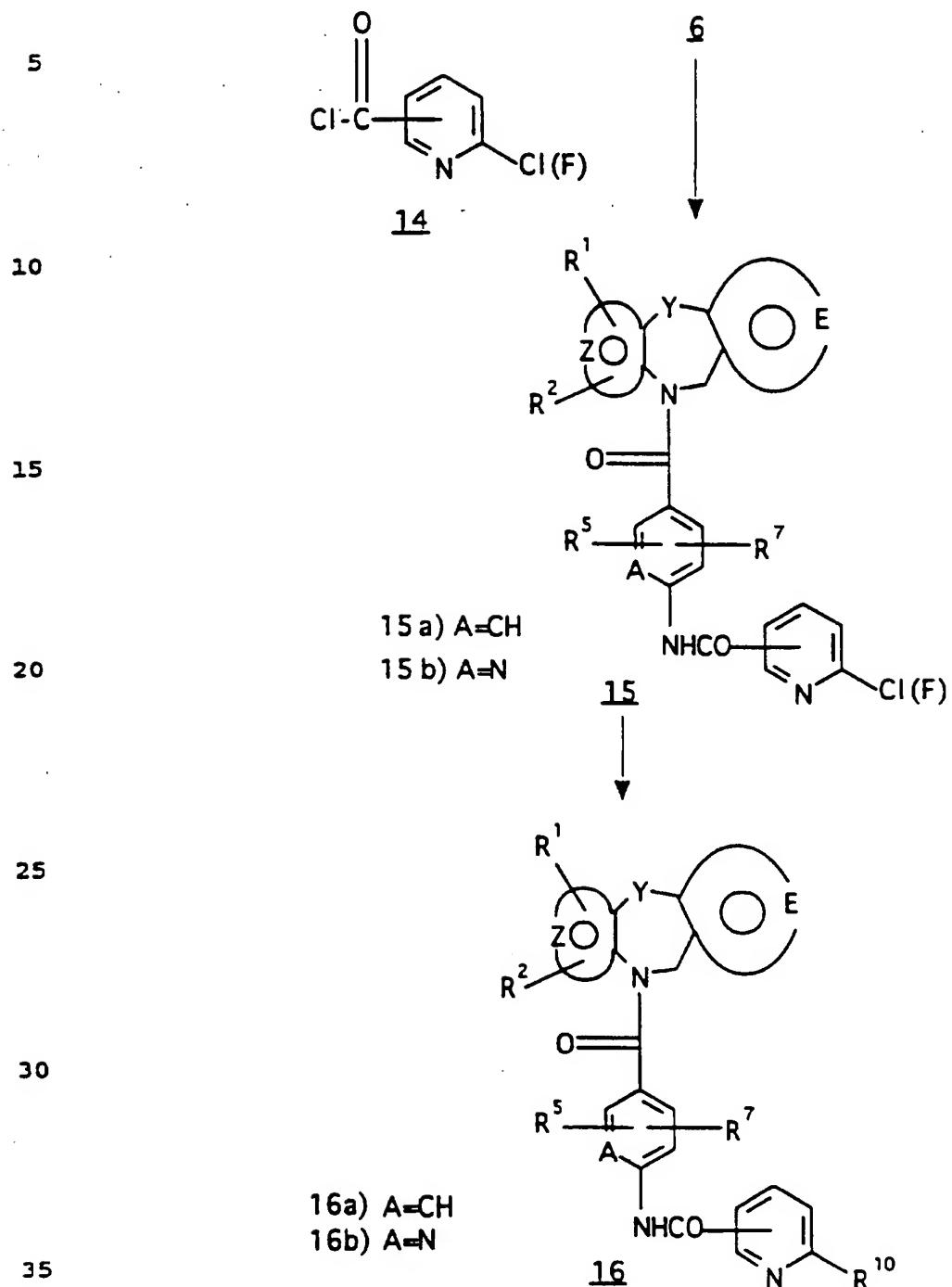
20

25

30

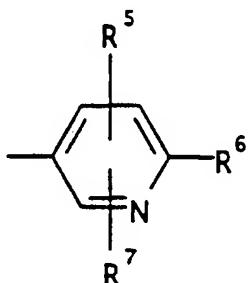
35

Scheme 4



-29-

The compounds of Formula I wherein E, Y, R¹, R², R³, R⁵, and R⁷ are as defined and the R³ (-COAr) aryl group is

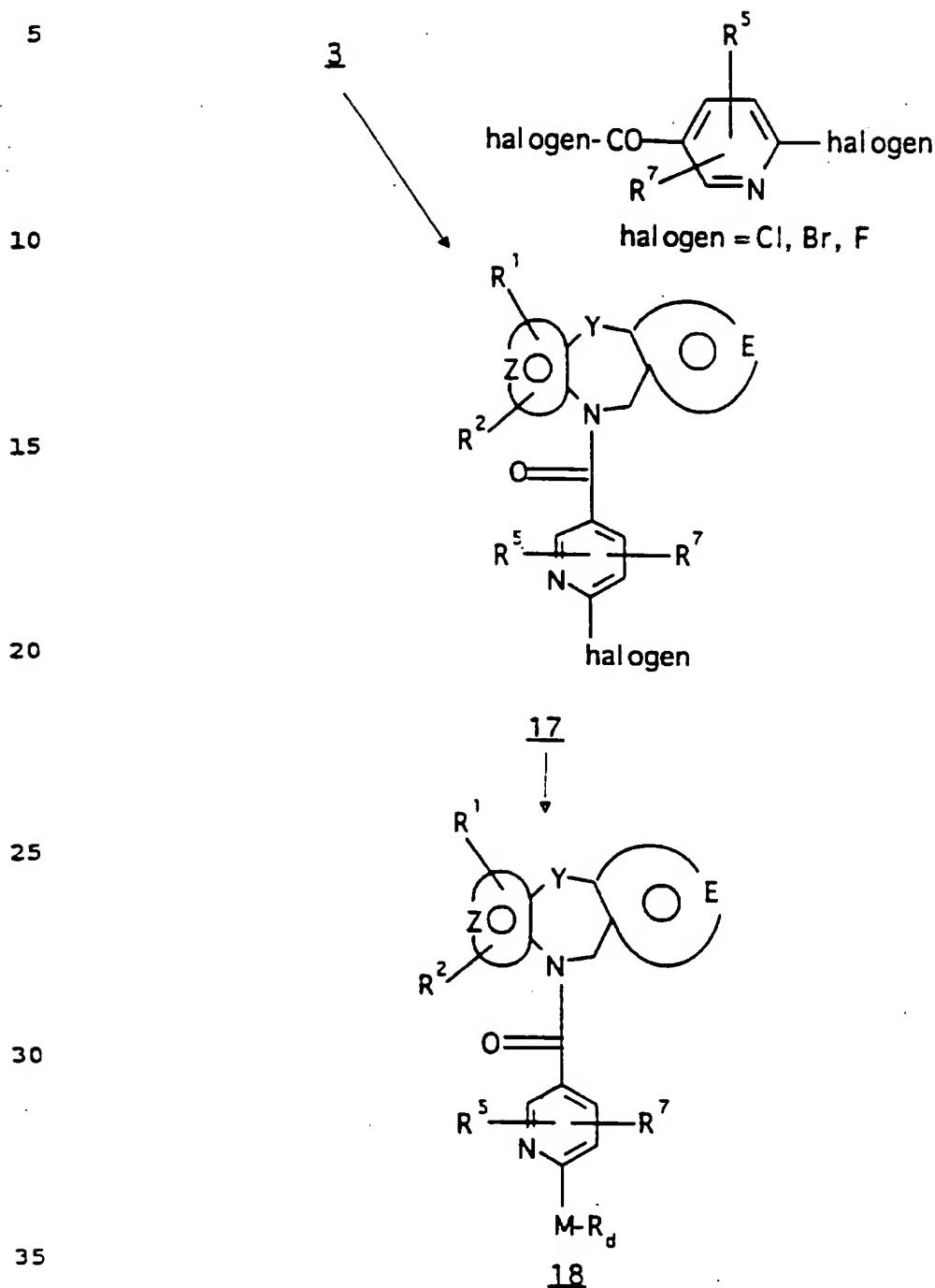


wherein R⁶ is -M-Rd wherein M is C, S, NH, N-CH₃ and Rd is as previously defined may be prepared as shown in Scheme 5 by first converting the azepine derivatives 3 into the intermediate 17 and then reacting these nicotinoyl intermediates with derivatives of the formulae: HM-Rd in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base such as N,N-diisopropylethylamine to give products 18. The best results are obtained in the displacement of the halogen in the pyridine intermediates 17, when the halogen atom is a fluoro group. With nucleophilic amines (M=NH, NCH₃) the reaction can be carried out with the 6-chloro, bromo or fluoro derivatives 17 in (1) the absence of a non-nucleophilic base; (2) in a non-nucleophilic solvent; or (3) with excess amine and no solvent. With derivatives HORd the 6-fluoro derivative 17 is required for satisfactory conversion of 17 to 18.

30

35

Scheme 5

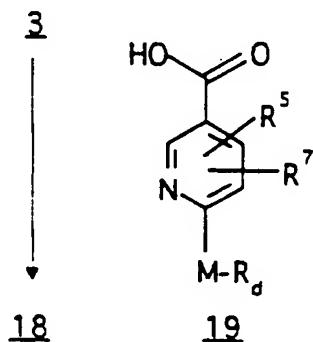


5 Alternatively, the products 18 may be prepared by first forming derivatives of the Formula 19 and then coupling these derivatives with the azepine compounds 3 (Scheme 6). The carboxylic acid intermediates are activated for coupling to the azepine compounds 3 by reaction with peptide coupling reagents, or preferably by conversion to the acid chlorides, anhydrides or mixed 10 anhydrides.

10

Scheme 6

15



20



25

As an alternative method for synthesis of compounds of this invention as depicted in Formula I wherein R_a, R_b, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁷, A, and Y are as previously defined and R³ is



30

is the coupling of aryl carboxylic acids 20 with the azepine derivative 3. (Scheme 7)

35

The aryl carboxylic acids are activated for coupling by conversion to an acid chloride, bromide or anhydride or by first reacting with an activating reagent such as N,N-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, diethyl cyano-phosphonate and related "peptide type" activating reagents. The method of activating the acids 20 for coupling to the azepine derivative 3 is chosen on the

5

10

15

20

25

30

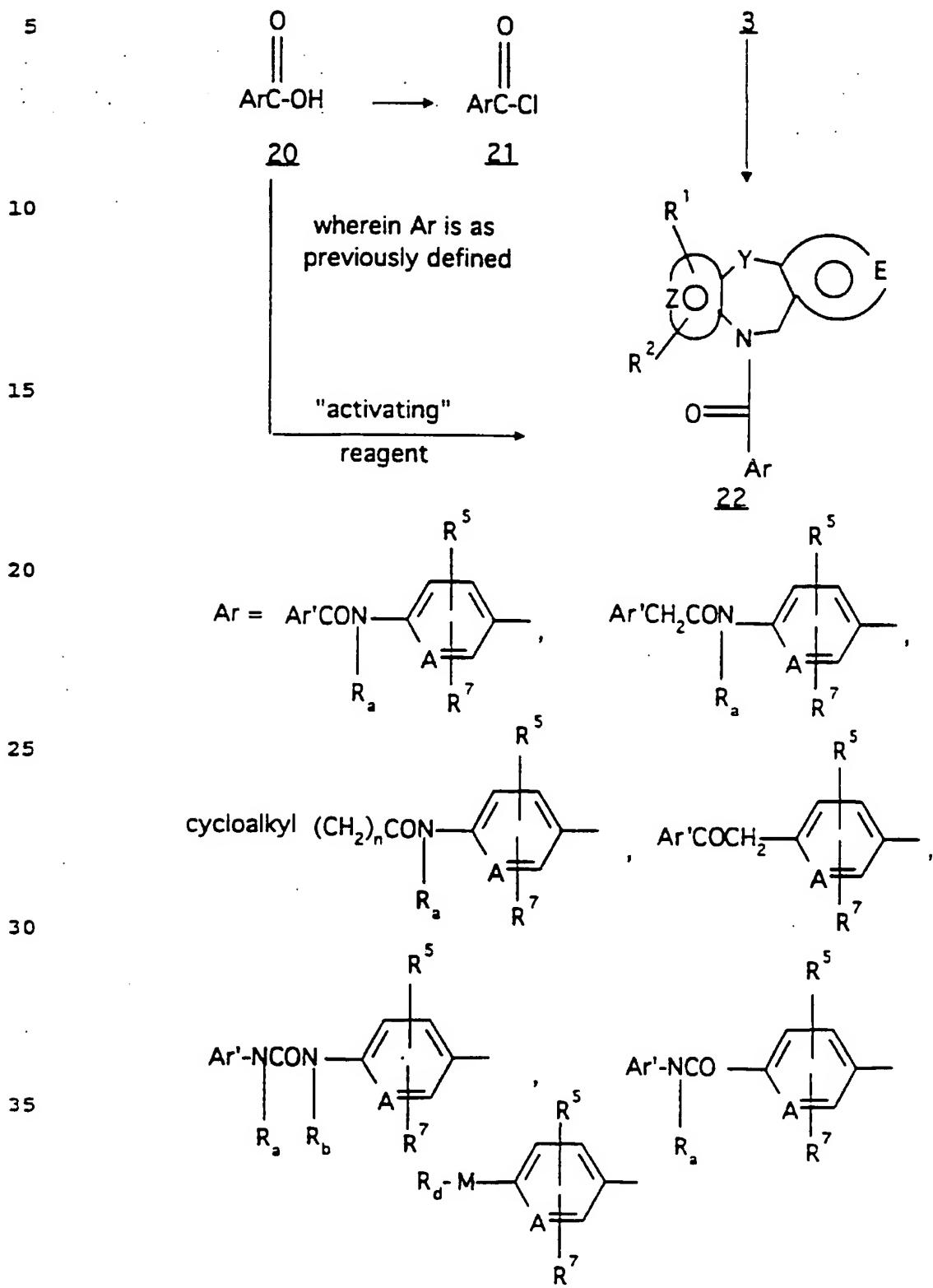
35

basis of compatibility with other substituent groups in the molecule. The method of choice is the conversion of the aryl carboxylic acid 20 to the corresponding aroyl chloride. The aryl acid chlorides 21 may be prepared by standard procedures known in the art, such as reaction with thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride and the like. The coupling reaction is carried out in solvents such as halogenated hydrocarbons, toluene, xylene, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane in the presence of pyridine or tertiary bases such as triethylamine and the like (Scheme 7). Alternatively, the aroyl chlorides, prepared from the aryl carboxylic acids 20 may be reacted with derivatives 3 in pyridine with or without 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine to give derivatives 22.

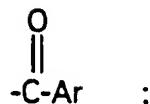
In general, when the aryl carboxylic acids are activated with N,N-carbonyldiimidazole and other "peptide type" activating reagents, higher temperatures are required than when the aroyl chlorides are used. The reaction may be carried out in a higher boiling solvent xylene or without a solvent (100°C to 150°C).

The activation of aryl carboxylic by conversion to the acid chlorides with thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride is preferred since the more reactive aroyl chlorides give better yields of product. The synthesis of selected examples is illustrated in Scheme 7.

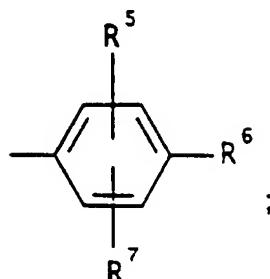
Scheme 7



The synthesis of compounds of Formula I
 wherein R³ is

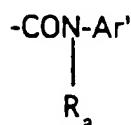


the Ar group is



15

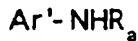
R⁶ is



20

and where Ar' is as previously defined is carried out according to Scheme 8. The azepine compounds are reacted with mono-methyl terephthalyl chloride 23 (prepared from mono-methyl terephthalate and thionyl chloride) in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, toluene and the like to give derivatives 24. These ester intermediates 24 are hydrolyzed with two to ten equivalents of an alkaline hydroxide such as potassium or sodium hydroxide in aqueous methanol or ethanol to give the corresponding acids after acidification and workup. The free acids are converted to the acid chlorides with thionyl chloride and these acid chloride intermediates 25, reacted with aminoaryl derivatives of formula:

35



-35-

wherein Ar' and Ra are as previously defined to give
compounds 27.

5

10

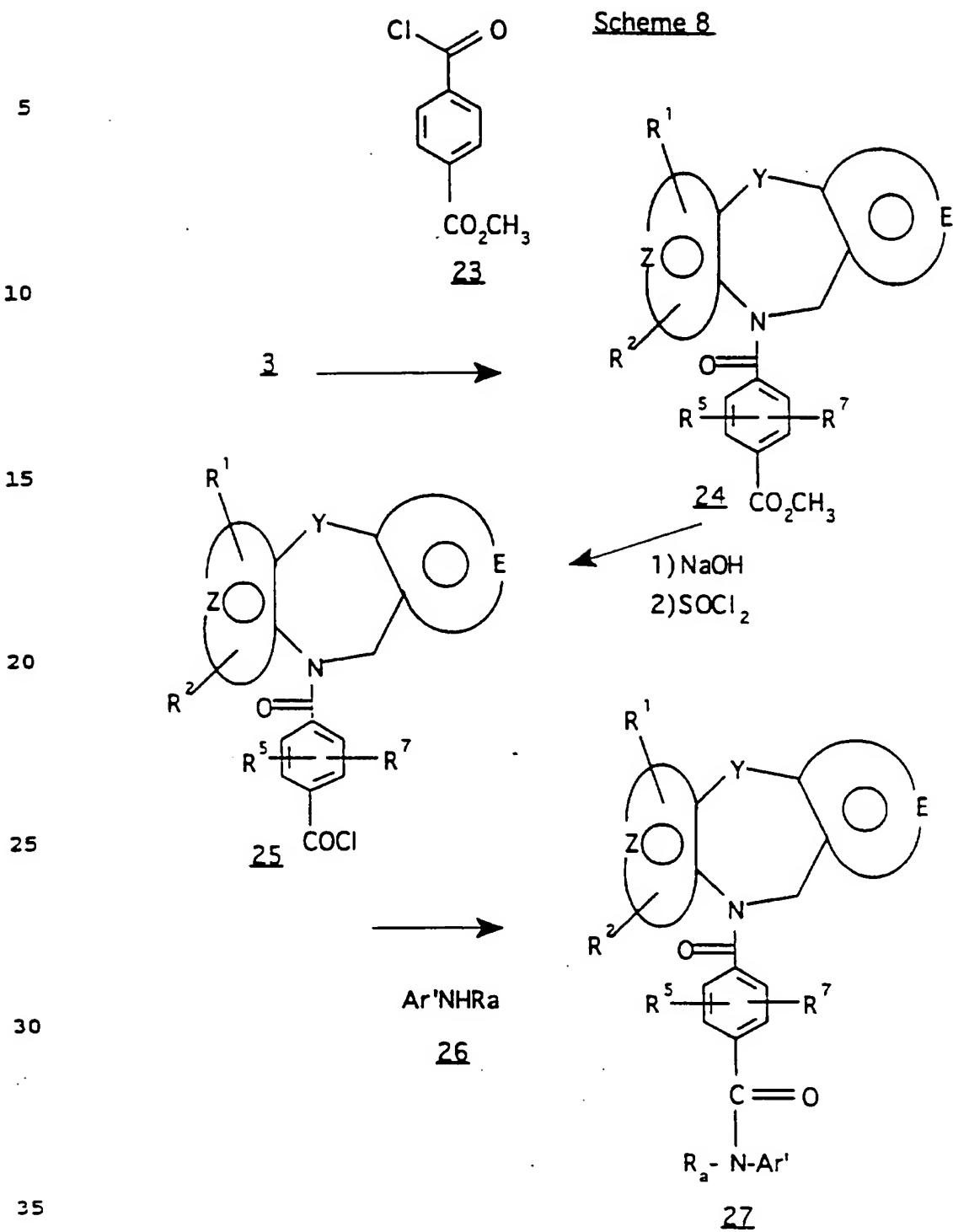
15

20

25

30

35



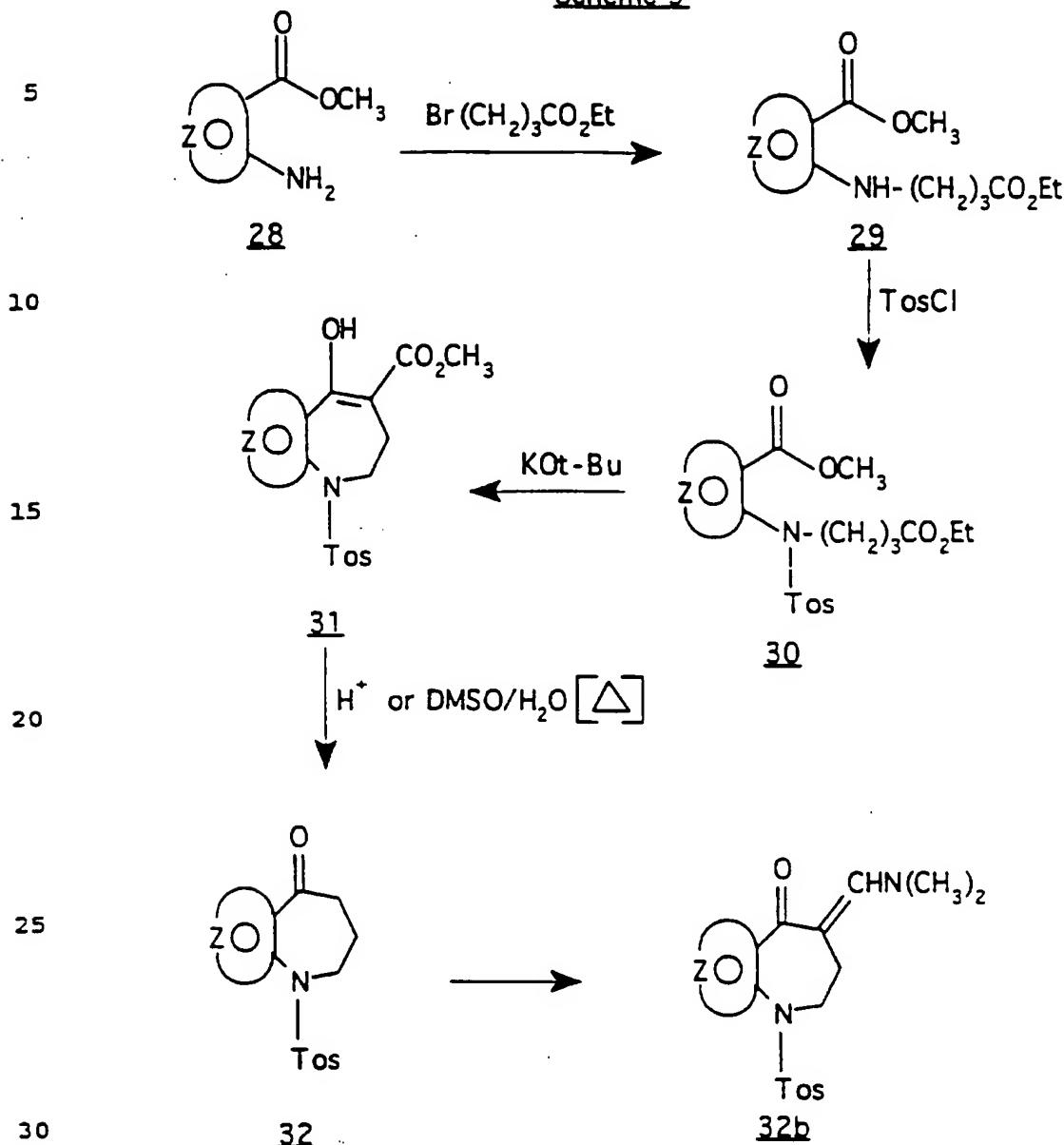
Certain of the tricyclic azepines as exemplified by compounds 33-35 are prepared through an initial ring closure of inter-mediate acyclic derivatives 30 followed by formation of the third ring through the use of literature procedures (Scheme 9). Ring closure of acyclic derivatives of structural type 30 wherein the nitrogen atom is pro-tected with a p-toluenesulfonyl group may be ring closed to give the β -keto esters 31 which exist in the enol form as shown (structure 31). Decarboxylation gives intermediates 32 which by literature procedures are converted to the tosyl protected tricyclic azepines 33-35. The tosyl protecting group in the derivatives, as exemplified by tricyclic azepines 33-35, can be removed as described in the literature (P.P. Carpenter and M. Lennon, J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Comm.; 665, 1979) for sulfonamide cleavage of benzazepine derivatives.

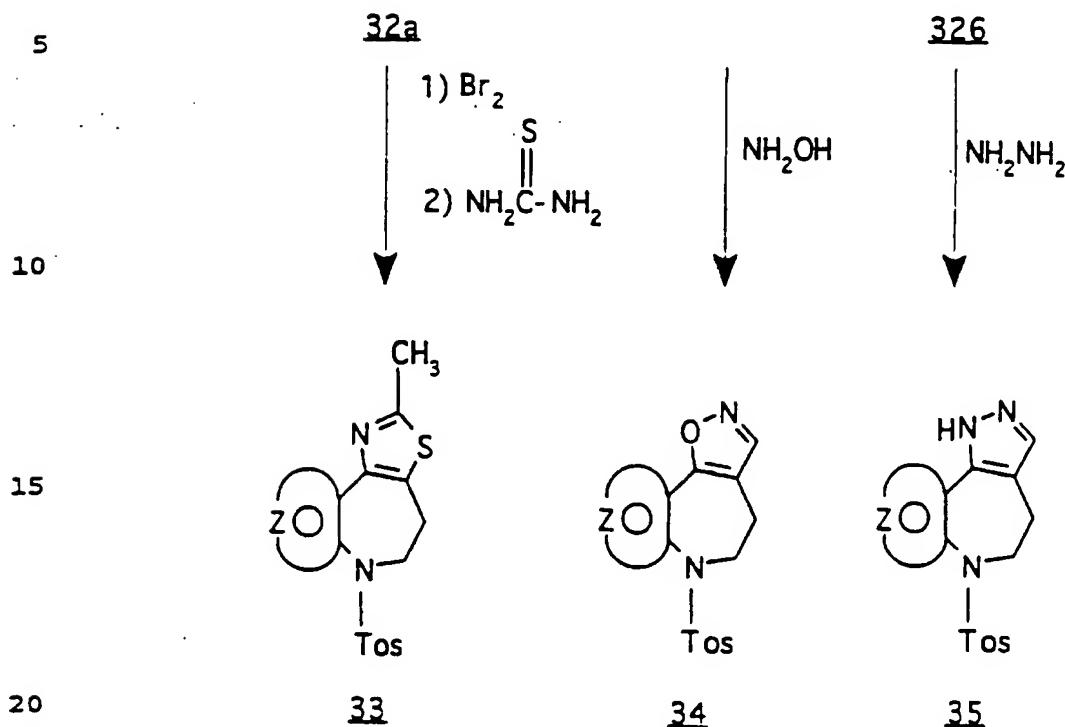
20

25

30

35

Scheme 9

Scheme 9 (cont'd)

25 Certain intermediate azepines with a fused heterocyclic ring, as exemplified by structure 41, which are useful in preparing the intermediate tricyclic azepines necessary for the synthesis of the vasopressin-oxytocin antagonists of this invention may be prepared as illustrated in Scheme 10. Standard chemical reactions and conditions are used to convert the azepinones of structural type 44 into the tricyclic azepines of formulae 47-50 (via intermediates 45 and 46).

30 As shown in Scheme 10, expansion of a six-membered ring into a seven-membered lactam is carried out by reaction of the ketone derivative 36 with hydroxyl amine to give the oxime derivative which in most cases exists as a mixture of syn and anti forms (structures 37 and 38). The mixture of oximes on reaction with 4-methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride gives

either a mixture of oxime Q-tosylates or in some cases a single Q-tosylate 39. Heating the oxime Q-tosylates with potassium acetate in a alcohol-water mixture (such as ethanol-water or n-butanol-water) gives the 7-membered lactam derivatives 41. Reduction of the lactam with borane, or lithium aluminium hydride (LAH) affords the fused heterocyclic azepines 42. The azepines 42 may be converted to intermediates 43 and 44, which are useful in the preparation of the novel compound of this invention. As hereinbefore stated, the heterocyclic azepines of structural types illustrated by formulae 45-55 may be prepared by the methods exemplified in Scheme 10 or literature methods for ring closures to azepines.

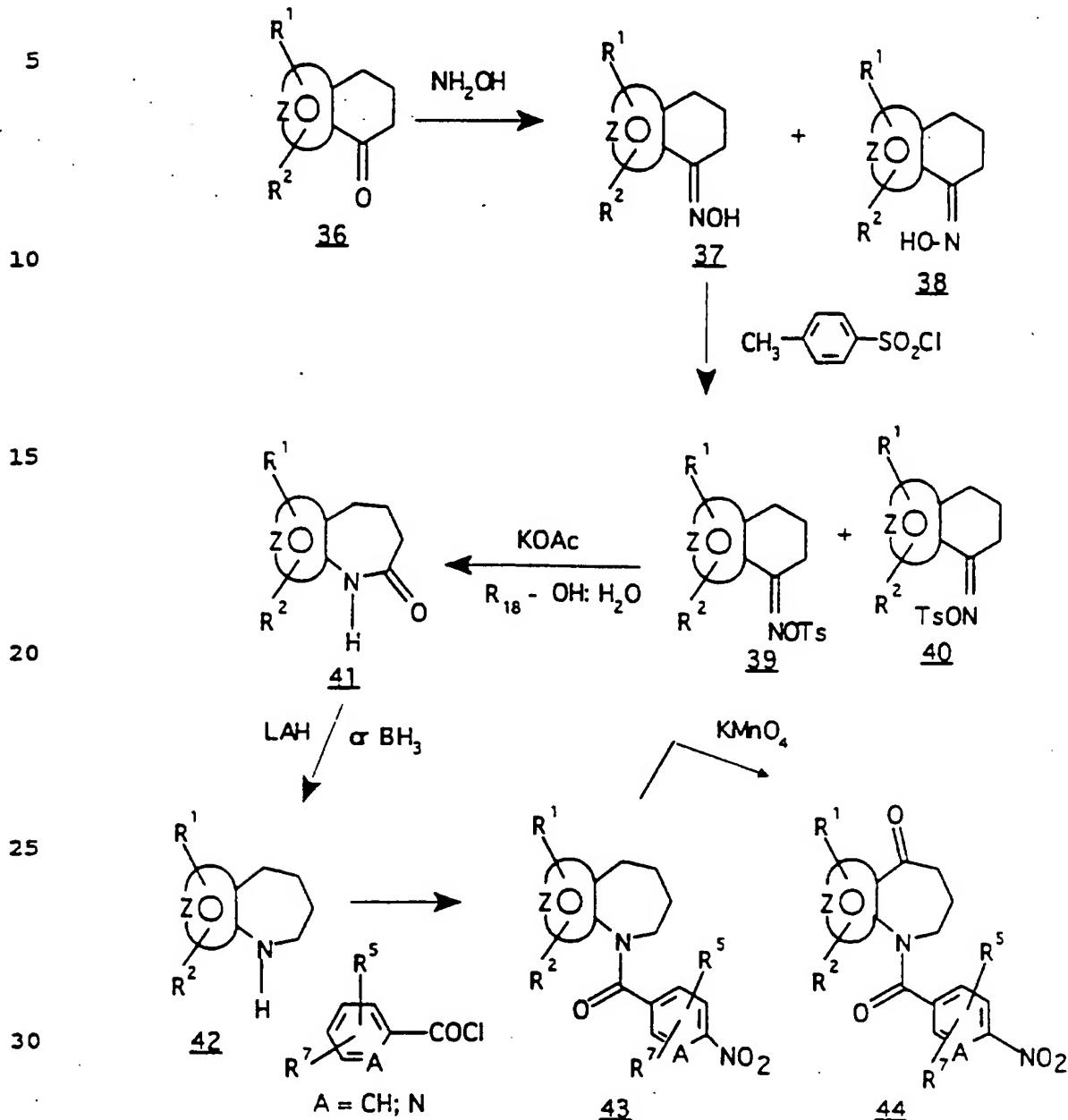
20

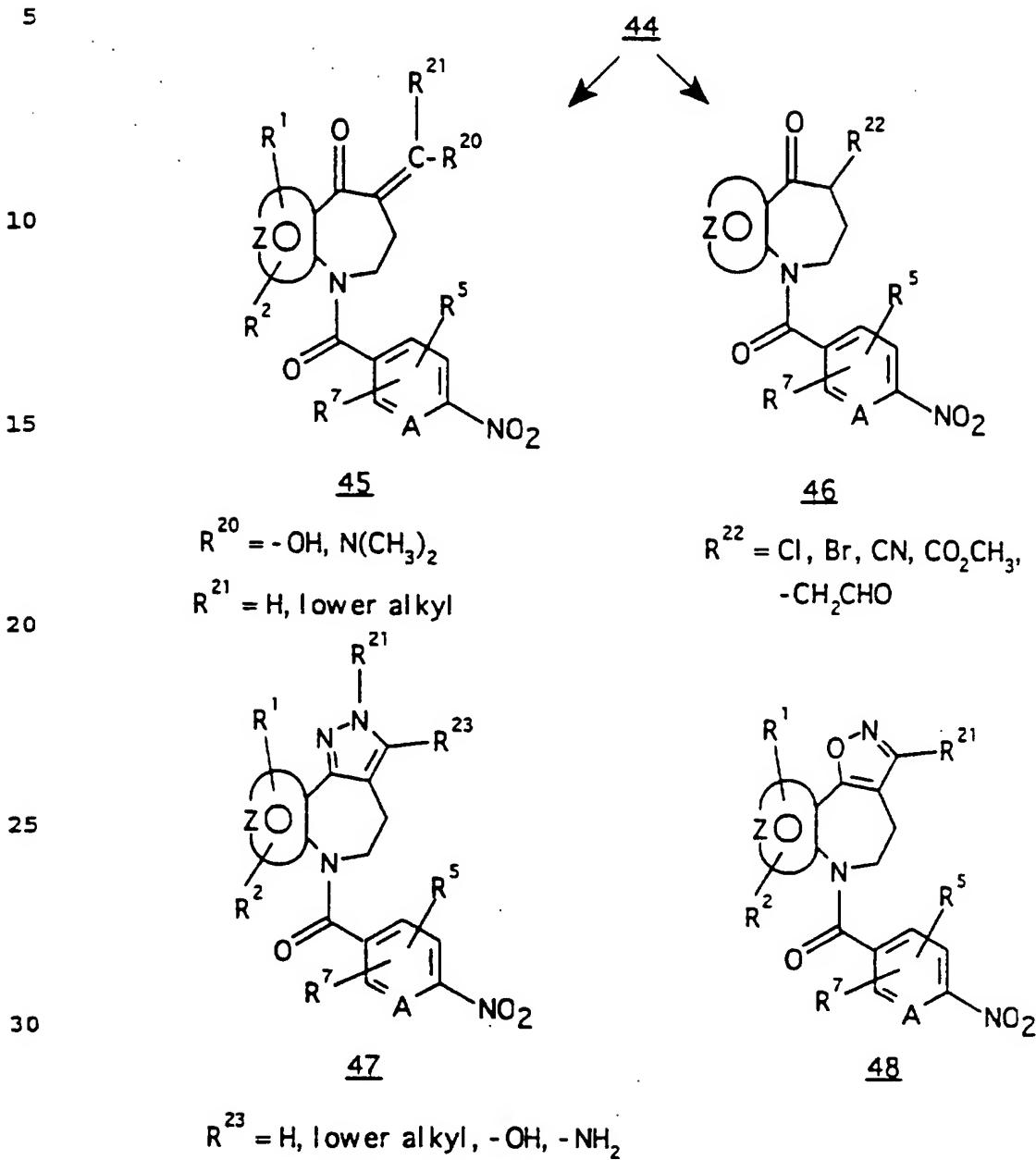
25

30

35

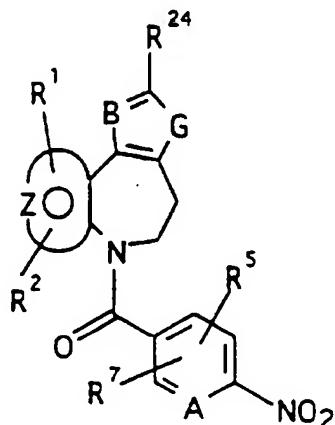
Scheme 10



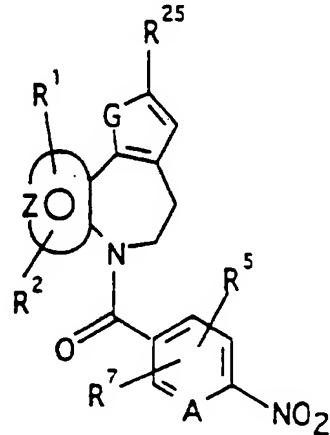
Scheme 10 (cont'd)

Scheme 10 (cont'd)

5



10



15

4950

B = CH, N

G = O, S, N

G = O, S

R²⁵ = lower alkyl, CO₂CH₃R²⁴ = H, lower alkyl

20

25

Certain of the compounds of this invention wherein R_a is as previously defined are prepared by introduction of the R_a group either in a final step or in the penultimate step as shown in Scheme 11. In the derivatives 51 introduction of the R_a substituent (R_a not H) may be carried out in the final step by first forming the anion of the amide function of derivative 51 followed by the appropriate alkylation of the nitrogen atom to give products 52. In derivatives where protection-deprotection is needed the derivatives 51 are converted to the protected intermediates 52a and 52b which on deprotection afford compounds 52. The R²⁷ group may be a tertiary butoxy carbonyl group, an acetyl group or other known amine protecting moieties. The R²⁸ group may be a tertiary butylcarbonyl group, an acetyl group or other known hydroxy protecting moieties.

30

35

5

Scheme 11

10

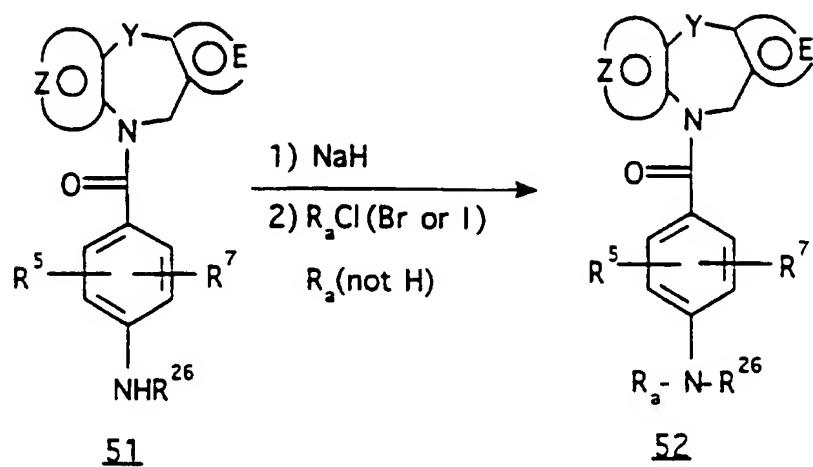
15

20

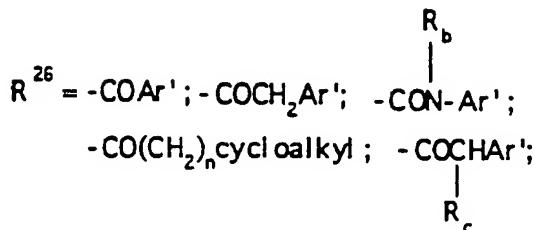
25

30

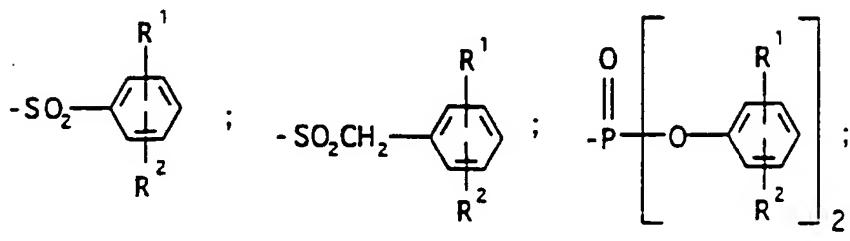
35



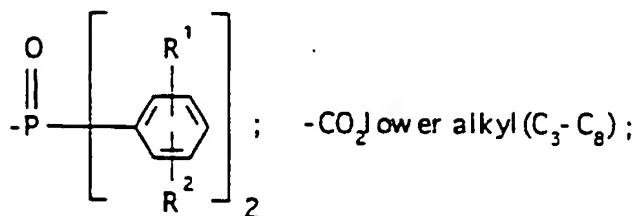
5



10



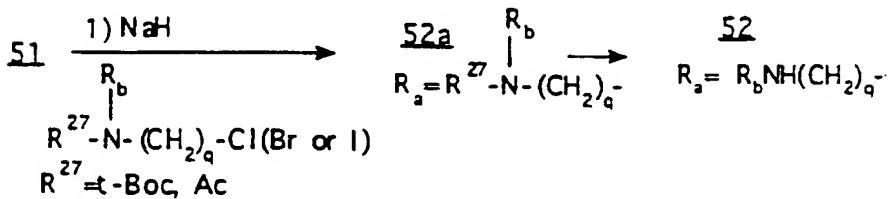
15



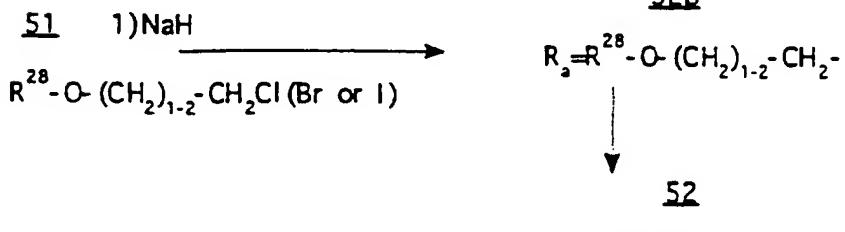
20

$-CO$ lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) ; $-SO_2$ lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) ;
 $-CO_2$ lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) ; $-CO$ lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) ;
 $-SO_2$ lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8)

25



30



35

Compounds of this invention represented by the formula 59 may be prepared from the compounds repre-

sented by those of formula 58 as shown in Scheme 12.
The 6-chloro, bromo or fluoro intermediate 17 is reacted
5 with an amino derivative of the formula R_aNH_2 wherein R_a
is as hereinbefore defined to give compounds of the
formula 58. Reaction of the 6-aminonicotinoyl deri-
vative 58 with an R^{26} -chloride wherein R^{26} is defined as
shown in Scheme 12 affords compounds of this invention
10 as exemplified by formula 59.

15

20

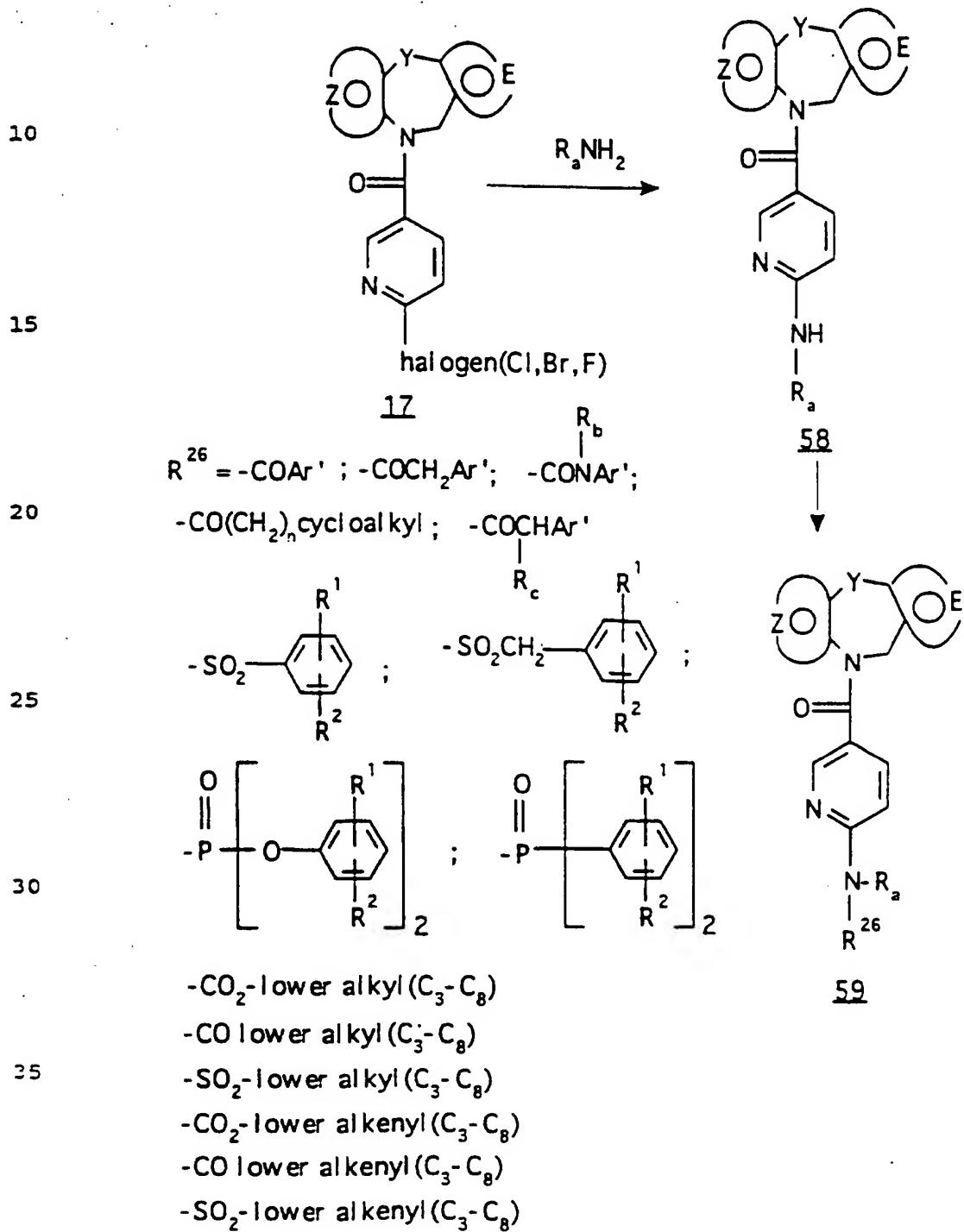
25

30

35

5

Scheme 12



Reference Example 16,7-Dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, Oxime

5 To a solution of 4-keto-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thionaphthalene in 260 ml of ethanol is added 27.4 g of hydroxylamine hydrochloride. To the mixture is added 16.5 g of sodium acetate and 66 ml of water and then the mixture is refluxed for 3.5 hours; chilled in an ice bath and filtered. The solid is washed with water and ethanol to give 13 g of solid which is dried at 65°C under vacuum to give 11.7 g of crystals, m.p. 124-126°C (mainly one isomer syn or anti). The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum and extracted with 250 ml of dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 100 ml each of water, brine and then dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed and the solid dried at 65°C under vacuum to give 32 g of crystals, m.p. 106-109°C (mainly one isomer syn or anti).

Reference Example 26,7-Dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, Oxime-O-tosylate

20 To a stirred solution of 12.2 g of 6,7-dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, oxime (mixture of isomers) in 26 ml of dry pyridine is cooled to 0°C is added 15.3 g of p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (all at once). After 5 minutes, a solid separates and the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the cold mixture is added 195 ml of 2N HCl and the mixture filtered to give a solid which is washed with water and dried (under vacuum) to give 21.5 g of product as crystals, m.p. 117°-120°C.

Reference Example 35,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-blaze]cyclopenta-furan-5-one

25 A mixture of 21.45 g of 6,7-dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, oxime-O-tosylate, 136.1 g of potassium acetate, 528 ml of ethanol and 904 ml of water is refluxed for 22 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum (to remove ethanol), chilled and filtered

5 to give a solid. The solid is washed with water, dried (in air) and recrystallized by dissolving in hot ethyl acetate and diluting the solution with hexane. Chilling and filtering gives 7.1 g of crystals, m.p. 128°-132°C.

Reference Example 4

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

10 (1) To a mixture of 4.54 g of lithium aluminum hydride in 400 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran under argon is added dropwise a solution of 10.0 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-5-one in 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 45°-50°C (exothermic reaction), and cooled to room temperature. The mixture is chilled in an ice bath (0°C) and 4.5 ml of water added dropwise over 1 hour, followed by the dropwise addition of 4.5 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide and the dropwise addition of 14 ml of water. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with tetrahydrofuran. The filtrate is concentrated to give a solid. The solid is crystallized from hexane to give 5.5 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 66-68°C.

15
20
25
30
35 (2) To a mixture of 21.2 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-5-one in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran under argon, chilled to 0°C is added 25.2 ml of a 10.0 molar solution of borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The solution is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and is refluxed for 5 hours. The mixture is cooled to room temperature and 85 ml of methanol added dropwise (exotherm). The solvent is removed and 100 ml of methanol is added (2 times) and after each addition the solvent is removed. To the residual solid (dried under vacuum) is added 126 ml of 2N NaOH and the mixture refluxed 3 hours. The mixture is chilled (2 hours) and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed to

give 15.4 g of brown solid, m.p. 55°-57°C. A sample (3 g) is sublimed to give 2.6 g of crystals, m.p. 64°-65°C.

5

Reference Example 5

4-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepine

10

To a solution of 10.71 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 19.4 ml of triethylamine in 150 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added in small portions 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride (exothermic). The mixture is stirred for 3 hours at 25°C and then washed with water, sodium bicarbonate solution, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed, the residue dried under vacuum and recrystallized by dissolving in hot ethyl acetate and diluting with hexane. Chilling overnight and filtering gives 16 g of light brown crystals, m.p. 141°-142°C.

15

Reference Example 6

20

4-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-8-one

25

30

35

To a solution of 9.0 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 713 ml of acetone is added 6.74 g of MgSO_4 and 351 ml of water followed by 8.2 g of KMnO_4 and heating at 70°C for 18 hours. Another 6.24 g of MgSO_4 and 8.2 g of KMnO_4 is added and heating continued at 70°C for 8 hours. An additional 6.24 g of MgSO_4 and 8.2 g of KMnO_4 is added and heating continued at 70°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the cake washed with acetone and 500 ml of methylene chloride. The combined filtrates are evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is washed with water and air dried to give 5.7 g of a solid. The solid is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 5.1 g of off white solid, m.p. 184-186°C.

Reference Example 74-(4-Aminobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-8-one

To a mixture of 2.0 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 40 ml of glacial acetic acid is added 20 ml of 6N-hydrochloric acid. The mixture is cooled and 3.53 g of iron powder added in portions. The mixture is allowed to warm to room temperature and is heated at 70-80°C for 1 hour and then cooled to 0°C. To mixture is basified with 10N NaOH (pH 14) and extracted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer is again extracted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate and the extracts combined. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml each of H₂O and brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The extract is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 1.24 g of crystals, m.p. 216-218°C.

Reference Example 82-Chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

A solution of 6.04 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 40 ml of tetrahydrofuran is cooled to 0°C and 5.34 g of N-chlorosuccinimide added in portions. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. The mixture is concentrated, diluted with 300 ml of dichloromethane and the mixture washed with 100 ml each of saturated K₂CO₃ solution, H₂O, 1N HCl and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated and the residue chromatographed by HPLC on silica gel (2-columns) with a Waters-Prep-500 instrument and the solvent system ethyl acetate-dichloromethane (1:1) containing 2% diethyl ether. The middle cuts are

combined and concentrated to give 0.135 g of 2,3-di-chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, m.p. 140°-142°C. The latter cuts are combined, concentrated and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 2.8 g of crystals, 119°-120°C.

Reference Example 9

2-Chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one

To a stirred solution of 0.336 g of 2-chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 36 ml of acetone-water (2:1) is added 0.21 g of anhydrous magnesium sulfate and 0.275 g of potassium permanganate. The mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. An additional 0.275 g of potassium permanganate and 0.21 g of magnesium sulfate is added and the mixture heated at 70°C for 6 hours. An additional 0.275 g of potassium permanganate and 0.21 g of magnesium sulfate is added and the mixture stirred and heated at 70°C for 24 hours. The hot mixture is filtered and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is heated in a few ml of ethyl acetate, cooled and filtered to give 0.20 g of product as a solid. The reaction is repeated on 10 times the scale to give 1.3 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 165°-168°C.

Reference Example 10

Methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-cyano-2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]benzoate

A 0.876 g sample of 60% sodium hydride in oil is washed with hexane followed by the addition of 60 ml of dry N,N-dimethylformamide. The reaction mixture is stirred for 1 hour under argon at room temperature after the addition of 4.73 g of α-(2-chlorophenyl)-4-morpholineacetonitrile. To the reaction mixture is added 4.58 g of methyl 4-(bromomethyl)benzoate and stirring continued for 3 hours. Several drops of acetic acid is

added to ice water and the reaction quenched. The pH is 3-4 and saturated NaHCO₃ added to adjust the pH to 6-7.

Upon cooling a solid forms which is filtered, washed with water and dried to give 5.92 g of yellow solid. Crystallization from methylene chloride-hexane gives 2.10 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 116-118°C.

Reference Example 11

Methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoate

A mixture of 1.0 g of methyl [4-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-cyano-2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]benzate and 14 ml of acetic acid and 6 ml of water is heated at reflux for 20 minutes then poured over crushed ice. After stirring for 15 minutes, the resulting solid is collected, washed with water and air dried to give 0.63 g of tan solid, m.p. 40-42°C.

Reference Example 12

4-[2-(2-Chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoic acid

A mixture of 18.78 g of methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoate in 288.8 ml of CH₃OH, 72.2 ml of water and 5.2 g of NaOH is refluxed for 3 hours then acidified with 2 N citric acid. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to remove the CH₃OH. The aqueous phase is extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and acidified with 1 N HCl. The resulting solid is collected and dried under vacuum to give 17.27 g of the desired product, m.p. 168-172°C.

Reference Example 13

Methyl 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylate

To a solution of 2.11 g of 4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carboxylic acid in 100 ml of methanol is added 202 mg of p-toluenesulfonic acid hydrate and the mixture heated at reflux for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and the methanol concentrated in vacuo to a residue. The residue is dissolved in 100 ml of ethyl acetate and

5

washed with 30 ml of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 30 ml of brine. The organic layer is dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 1.75 g of the desired product as a white crystalline solid, m.p. 100-102°C.

10

Reference Example 14

Methyl 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-oxo-4H-furo[3,2-blaze]epine-3-carboxylate

15

20

To a mixture of 1.0 g of methyl 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylate and 502 mg of sodium azide in 5 ml of chloroform is added dropwise at 32-36°C under argon 1.4 ml of sulfuric acid. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with 14 ml of water and rendered alkaline with NH₄OH and extracted with chloroform. The separated organic layer is washed with water, brine and dried with Na₂SO₄ and concentrated in vacuo to give 1.0 g of the desired product as a white solid.

Reference Example 15

25

(E)-4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-[[(4-methylphenyl)imino]-sulfonyl]oxyliminol-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid

30

To a partial solution of 2.8 g of (E)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid in 7 ml of pyridine is added portionwise at 0°C, 3.01 g of p-toluene sulfonyl chloride under argon. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour then diluted with 40 ml of cold 1 N HCl, filtered, washed with water and dried with Na₂SO₄. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 4.78 g of the desired product as an off-white solid, m.p. 155-165°C.

35

Reference Example 165,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-5-oxo-4H-furo[3,2-blazepine-3-carboxylic acid

5 A mixture of 1.0 g of (E)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-[[[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]oxy]imino]-3-benzofuran-carboxylic acid, 5.9 g of potassium acetate, 23 ml of ethanol and 39 ml of water is heated at reflux for 48 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo,
10 80 ml of methylene chloride added and the separated organic layer washed with water, brine and dried with Na₂SO₄. The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a solid which is purified by chromatography on a
15 preparative silica gel plate by elution with 0.5% acetic acid in ethyl acetate. The eluted band is washed with 1% acetic acid in ethyl acetate. The organic layer is dried with Na₂SO₄ and concentrated in vacuo to give 200 mg of off-white solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 165 mg of the desired product as
20 a white solid.

Reference Example 17(E) and (Z)-4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-(hydroxylimino)-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid

25 To a solution of 30.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid in 225 ml of ethanol is added 22.97 g of hydroxylamine hydrochloride, followed by 18.10 g of sodium acetate and 55 ml of water. The reaction mixture is heated at reflux for 2.5 hours and concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is
30 diluted with 600 ml of ethyl acetate, washed with 2 x 200 ml of water, brine and dried over Na₂SO₄. The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dried under vacuum to give 31.0 g of the
35 desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 18(E) and (Z)-6,7-Dihydro-4-(5H)benzofuranone, O-[1(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]oxime

5

To a partial solution of 28.0 g of (E) and (Z)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)benzofuran in 54 ml of pyridine is added portionwise at 0°C, 38.8 g of p-toluene sulfonyl chloride under argon. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour then diluted with 600 ml of ethyl acetate and 400 ml of cold 2 N HCl. The organic layer is washed with 200 ml of water and 200 ml of brine, and dried with Na₂SO₄. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 50 g of the desired product as a solid. Crystallization from ethyl alcohol by allowing to stand at room temperature gives 19.9 g of off-white needles, m.p. 123-125°C. The filtrate is allowed to stand and the crystals collected and dried to give 10.0 g of the desired product as an off-white solid, 83-85°C.

15

Reference Example 194-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

20

To a solution of 15.0 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 150 ml of dichloromethane cooled to 0°C is added 27.2 ml of triethylamine. After stirring 5 minutes, a solution of 28.0 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 140 ml of dichloromethane is added slowly. The solution is stirred at room temperature overnight, diluted with 450 ml of dichloromethane and the solution washed with 200 ml each of water, 2N citric acid, 1 M sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer is dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered through a thin pad of hydrated magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 24.3 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 131-134°C.

25

30

35

Reference Example 204-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine-8-one

5 To a solution of 2.02 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 144 ml of acetone is added 1.56 g of magnesium sulfate, 72 ml of water and 1.89 g of potassium permanganate. The mixture is stirred and heated at 70-75°C for 4 hours. An additional amount of 10 magnesium sulfate (1.56 g) and potassium permanganate (1.89 g) is added and the mixture stirred and heated at 75°C for 16 hours. Magnesium sulfate (1.56 g) and potassium permanganate (1.89 g) are added and the 15 mixture stirred and heated at 75°C for 5 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with acetone and dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated and the residue (1.4 g) is heated with ethyl acetate, the mixture (with insoluble solid) cooled and filtered to give 1.0 g of product as a 20 solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals, m.p. 180°-185°C.

Reference Example 215-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride

25 A mixture of 8.0 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoic acid and 52 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and two times 50 ml of toluene is added and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 8.5 g of product as a gum.

Reference Example 222-Chloro-5-(methylthio)benzoyl chloride

30 A mixture of 2.03 g of 2-chloro-5-(methylthio)benzoic acid and 10 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and 20 ml of toluene added and removed under vacuum (2 times) to give 2.2 g of brown needles.

Reference Example 232-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride

5 As described for Reference Example 21, 25 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoic acid is reacted with thionyl chloride (124 ml) to give the product (27.0 g) as a brown oil.

Reference Example 242-Chloro-5-nitrobenzoyl chloride

10 As described for Reference Example 21, 5.0 g of 2-chloro-5-nitrobenzoic acid is reacted with 50 ml of thionyl chloride to give 5.6 g of the product as an off-white solid.

Reference Example 252,3-Dimethylbenzoyl chloride

15 As described for Reference Example 21, 3.0 g of 2,3-dimethylbenzoic acid is reacted with 40 ml of thionyl chloride to give 3.2 g of the product as a colorless oil.

Reference Example 262-Chlorobenzoyl chloride

20 As described for Reference Example 21, 3.13 g of 2-chlorobenzoic acid is reacted with 40 ml of thionyl chloride to give 3.32 g of product as an off-white semi solid.

Reference Example 274-[2-Methylbenzoyl]aminobenzoic acid

25 A mixture of 43.42 g (0.26 mol) of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate and 40.8 g (0.26 mol) of 2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 150 ml of dichloromethane is cooled in an ice bath and 26.56 g (0.26 mol) of triethylamine is added dropwise. After the addition, the solution is stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture is poured into water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with water, 1 N HCl, 1 M NaHCO₃ and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed and the solid slurried with ethyl acetate and filtered to give

57 g of ethyl 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoate as crystals, m.p. 110-115°C.

5 A mixture of 50.7 g (0.20 mol) of the preceding compound, 280 ml of ethanol and 55 ml of 10 N NaOH is refluxed for 5 minutes. The mixture is cooled to room temperature, diluted with 200 ml of water and acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid (pH 1-2).
10 The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water and dried to give 51 g of product as white crystals, m.p. 270-275°C.

Reference Example 28

4-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoyl chloride

15 A mixture of 10.3 g of 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)-amino]benzoic acid and 32 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solution is concentrated under vacuum. Toluene is added and the solvent removed under vacuum. Toluene is added and the mixture chilled and filtered to give a yellow solid, m.p. 135-141°C.
20

Reference Example 29

4-[(2,6-Dimethoxybenzoyl)amino]benzoic acid

25 A mixture of 2 g (10 mmol) of 2,6-dimethoxybenzoyl chloride, 1.65 g (10 mmol) of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate, 1.11 g of triethylamine and 61 mg of 4-dimethylaminopyridine in 10 ml of dichloromethane is refluxed for 20 hours. The mixture is diluted with water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with water, 1 N HCl, 1 N Na₂CO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 1.22 g of ethyl 4-[(2,6-dimethoxybenzoyl)amino]benzoate as crystals, m.p. 183-185°C.
30

35 A mixture of 3.88 g (11.79 mmol) of the preceding compound, 17.3 ml of 2 N NaOH and 20 ml of methanol is stirred at room temperature overnight. Methanol (30 ml) and water (10 ml) are added and the solution refluxed for 1/2 hour. The solvents are

5

removed under vacuum and the residual solid triturated with ether and the ether decanted. The solid is dissolved in 30 ml of water and acidified with 2 N HCl (pH 3). The mixture is filtered, the solid washed with water and dried at 60°C under vacuum to give 3.0 g of solid, m.p. 236-240°C.

10

Reference Example 30
Ethyl 4-[(4-pyridinylcarbonyl)aminobenzoic acid

15

20

To a cooled mixture of 1.78 g (0.01 mol) of isoniconinoyl chloride hydrochloride in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.52 g (0.025 mol) of triethylamine. To the solution is added a solution of 1.65 g of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate in 5 ml of dichloromethane. After stirring at room temperature overnight, 50 mg of 4-dimethylaminopyridine is added and the mixture is refluxed for 24 hours. The mixture is poured into water and filtered to give 3.4 g of brown solid. A 0.50 g sample is triturated with ethyl acetate to give 0.37 g of ethyl 4-[(4-pyridinylcarbonyl)amino]benzoate as yellow crystals, m.p. 143-145°C.

25

Reference Example 31

2-Methylfurane-3-carbonyl chloride

30

35

A mixture of 4.0 g of methyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxylate, 30 ml of 2 N NaOH and 15 ml methanol is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum to give a solid. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane (discarded). The solid is dissolved in water and the solution acidified with 2 N citric acid to give a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals 1.05 g of crystals of 2-methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid. The preceding compound (0.95 g) and 3 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent is removed, toluene added (20 ml, three times) and the solvent removed to give the product as an oil.

Reference Example 324-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)aminobenzoic acid

A sample of 1.51 g of sodium hydride (60% in oil) is washed with hexane under argon to remove the oil. To the washed sodium hydride is added 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. To this mixture is added dropwise a solution of 8.69 g of ethyl 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-benzoate in 20 ml of dimethylformamide. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 0.5 hour and then 5.23 g of methyl iodide is added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is diluted with water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried (Na_2SO_4), concentrated to reduce the volume and the solution filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 11 g of an oil (1:1 mixture of product and N,N-dimethylformamide). The preceding product, ethyl 4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-benzoate, (11 g) is dissolved in 30 ml of methanol and 25 ml of 2 N NaOH added. The mixture is refluxed for 2 hours and the solvent removed. The residue is extracted with ether (discard) and the remaining residue dissolved in 50 ml of water. The basic solution is acidified with 2 N citric acid and the solid filtered off and washed with water. The product is air dried to give 6.72 g of crystals, m.p. 187-190°C.

Reference Example 334-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)aminobenzoyl chloride

A solution of 6.72 g of 4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoic acid in 20 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for one hour. The volatiles are removed in vacuo. Toluene is added to the residue and then the toluene removed in vacuo (repeated several times) to give the 7.3 g of product as a brown oil.

As described for Reference Example 32, but substituting the appropriate ethyl 4-[(N-aryloyl)amino]-benzoate, the following compounds are prepared.

5

Reference Example 344-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 35N-[N-Methyl-N-(2,5-dichlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]

10

Reference Example 36N-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dichlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 374-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chloro-4-methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 38

15

4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 394-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dimethylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 40

20

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2,3-dimethylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 414-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 42

25

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 434-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dimethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 44

30

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxy-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 454-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylthiobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]Reference Example 46

35

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylthiophen-3-ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid]

Reference Example 47

4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-methylthiophene-2-vlcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 48

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylfuran-3-vlcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 49

4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-methylfuran-2-vlcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 50

4-[N-Methyl-N-(phenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 51

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chlorophenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 52

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxyphenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 53

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylphenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 54

4-[N-Methyl-N-(cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 55

4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-cyclohexenecarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 56

4-[N-Methyl-N-(cyclohexylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 577,8-Dihydro-5(6H)quinolinone

A mixture of 57.93 g of 3-amino-2-cyclohexene-1-one, 76.8 g of 3-(dimethylamino)acrotein, 62.5 ml of glacial acetic acid and 270 ml of toluene is refluxed under argon for 16 hours and concentrated under vacuum to dryness. Toluene (200 ml) is added and the solvent removed under vacuum. To the residue is added one liter of dichloromethane and then 200 ml of saturated NaHCO₃ slowly added and solid NaHCO₃ added to bring the pH to 8. The mixture is filtered and the CH₂Cl₂ layer separated. The CH₂Cl₂ layer is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate

5

concentrated to dryness. The residual black oil is extracted with hot hexane and the hexane decanted. This process is repeated until no more product extracted into the hexane. The hexane extracts are combined and the solvent removed to give 17.3 g of product as an oil.

Reference Example 64

10

7,8-Dihydro-5(6H)quinolinone, oxime

15

To a solution of 3.78 g of 7,8-dihydro-5(6H)quinolone in 20 ml of ethanol is added 2.68 g of hydroxylamine, hydrochloride, 3.23 g of sodium acetate and 5 ml of water. The mixture is refluxed under argon for 4.5 hours, cooled and filtered. The solid is washed with 30 ml of ethanol-water (1:1) and dried under vacuum to give 3.58 g of solid, m.p. 232-236°C. Recrystallization from ethanol gives crystals, m.p. 234-236°C.

Reference Example 65

20

7,8-Dihydro-5(6H)quinolinone, O-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]oxime

25

To a mixture of 2.30 g of 7,8-dihydro-5(6H)-quinolinone, oxime, 3.59 g of 4-methylphenylsulfonyl chloride in 32 ml of acetone is added a solution of 0.84 g of potassium hydroxide in 10 ml of water. The mixture is refluxed for 0.5 hour under argon and the volatiles removed under vacuum. Water is added to the residue and the mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water and 1 N NaHCO₃. The solid is dissolved in dichloromethane, dried and the solvent removed to give 3.83 g of solid. Recrystallization from diethyl ether gives crystals, m.p. 102-104°C.

30

Reference Example 66

5,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-6H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6-one

35

A mixture of 8.26 g of 7,8-dihydro-5(6H)-quinolinone, O-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]oxime, 54.63 g of potassium acetate, 193 ml of ethanol and 354 ml of water is refluxed for 20 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum to remove volatiles and the

5 aqueous residue (contains solid) is added chloroform. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth, the filter pad washed with chloroform and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residual solid is recrystallized from acetone to give 2.81 g of crystals, m.p. 156-159°C.

10 Reference Example 67

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

15 A mixture of 1.56 g of 5,7,8,9-tetrahydro-6H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine-6-one, 3.31 g of lithium aluminum hydride in 40 ml of tetrahydrofuran is refluxed for 4 hours. The mixture is cooled (0°C) and 25 ml of methanol is added dropwise. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth, the filter cake washed with tetrahydrofuran and the filtrate concentrated to dryness under vacuum. Water (50 ml) is added to the residue and the mixture extracted with diethyl ether. The extract is dried (Na₂SO₄) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate (pad washed with) diethyl ether. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give 1.01 g of crystals, m.p. 70-71°C.

20 Reference Example 68

25 6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

30 To a mixture of 2.90 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 2.37 g of triethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added 5.16 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 50 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 3 hours and then poured into water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 1 N NaHCO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate, the pad washed with CH₂Cl₂ and ethyl acetate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residual solid (7.13 g) is triturated

with ethyl acetate to give 4.41 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 143-145°C.

5 Reference Example 6

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-5-(4-amino-2-chlorobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

A mixture of 3.31 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine and 10 6.78 g of stannus chloride dihydrate ($\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$) in 200 ml of methanol is refluxed for 2 hours under argon. The solvent is removed under vacuum and 5 ml of saturated NaHCO_3 solution and solid NaHCO_3 added to bring the pH 15 to 7. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate, the extract filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , H_2O , brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The filtrate is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to give 2.58 g of an amorphous solid. Anal. Calc'd for $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{16}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}$; C, 59.9; H, 5.7; 20 N, 13.1; Cl, 11.1 Found: C, 60.5; H, 5.0; N, 12.9; Cl, 11.6.

25 Reference Example 7

Methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

Dry methanol (400 ml) is cooled in an ice bath and HCl gas is bubbled into the mixture for 25 minutes. To the MeOH-HCl is added 30 g of 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid and then the mixture is stirred and heated at 90°C for 2 hours (all the solid dissolved). 30 The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residual solid dissolved in 100 ml of water. The acidic solution is neutralized with saturated sodium bicarbonate (solid separated) and the mixture chilled and filtered to give 30 g of white crystals, m.p. 150°-154°C.

35 Reference Example 71

6-[1-(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a mixture of 4.5 g of methyl 6-amino-pyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.53 ml of triethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane (cooled in an ice bath) is added 6.38 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 18 hours and an additional 3.4 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride added. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the mixture is filtered to give 3.0 g of methyl 6-[(bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino)pyridine-3-carboxylate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue triturated with hexane and ethyl acetate to give an additional 9.0 g of bis acylated compound.

A mixture of 12.0 g of methyl 6-[(bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino)pyridine-3-carboxylate, 60 ml of methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum, diluted with 25 ml of water, cooled and acidified with 1 N HCl. The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water to give 6.3 g of the product as a white solid.

As described for Reference Example 71, but substituting the appropriate aroyl chloride, heteroaroyl chloride, cycloalkanoyl chlorides, phenylacetylchlorides and related appropriate acid chlorides, the following 6-[(areylamino)pyridine-3-carboxylic acids, 6-[(heteroaroyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids and related 6-[(acylated)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids are prepared.

Reference Example 72

6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 73

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 74

5 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
 carboxylic acid

Reference Example 75

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
 carboxylic acid

Reference Example 76

10 6-[(3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
 acid

Reference Example 77

6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid
 Reference Example 78

15 6-[(2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid
 Reference Example 79

6-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid
 Reference Example 80

20 6-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic

acid

Reference Example 81

25 6-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 82

6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
 acid

Reference Example 83

30 6-[(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
 acid

Reference Example 84

6-[(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid
 Reference Example 85

6-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 86

6-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
 acid

Reference Example 87

35 6-[(Tetrahydrofuran-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
 carboxylic acid

Reference Example 88

5 6-[1(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 89

10 6-[1(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 90

15 6-[1(cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 91

20 6-[1(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 92

25 6-[1(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 93

30 6-[1(cyclopentylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 94

35 6-[1(cyclohexylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 95

40 6-[1(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 96

45 6-[1(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 97

50 6-[1(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 98

55 6-[1(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 99

60 6-[1(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 100

65 6-[1(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 1016-1(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1026-1(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1036-1(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic
acidReference Example 1046-1(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1056-1(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1066-1(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-
carboxylic acidReference Example 1076-1(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-
carboxylic acidReference Example 1086-1(2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminopyridine-3-
carboxylic acidReference Example 1096-1(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1106-1(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1116-1(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1126-1(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-
3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1136-1(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 1146-1(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic
acid

Reference Example 115

5 6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 116

10 6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 117

15 6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 118

20 6-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

25 A mixture of 6.2 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 23 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. An additional 12 ml of thionyl chloride is added and the mixture refluxed for 0.5 hour. The mixture is concentrated to dryness under vacuum and 30 ml of toluene added to the residue. The toluene is removed under vacuum and the process (add toluene and remove) is repeated to give 7.7 g of crude product as a solid.

30 As described for Reference Example 118, the following 6-(acyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chlorides are prepared.

Reference Example 119

35 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 120

40 6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 121

45 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 122

50 6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 123

6-1(3-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

5

Reference Example 124

6-1(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 125

6-1(2-Chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride.

10

white crystals

Reference Example 126

6-1(2-Fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 127

6-1(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

15

Reference Example 128

6-1(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 129

20

6-1(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 130

6-1(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

25

Reference Example 131

6-1(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 132

6-1(2-Bromobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 133

30

6-1(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 134

6-1(Tetrahydrofuranyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride

35

Reference Example 135

6-1(Tetrahydrochienyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 136

5 6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 137

10 6-[(Cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 138

15 6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 139

20 6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 140

25 6-[(Cyclorentylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 141

30 6-[(Cyclohexylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride
 Reference Example 142

35 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 143

40 6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 144

45 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 145

50 6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
 chloride

Reference Example 146

55 6-[(2-Methyl-5-fluorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-
 carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 147

60 6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrotienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-
 carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 148

5 6-[(2-Methyl-3-tertbutylhydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 149

6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 150

10 6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 151

15 6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 152

6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 153

20 6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 154

6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 155

25 6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 156

6-[(2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 157

30 6-[(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 158

6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 159

35 6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride]

Reference Example 160

5 6-[4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 161

10 6-[2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 162

15 6-[4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 163

20 6-[2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 164

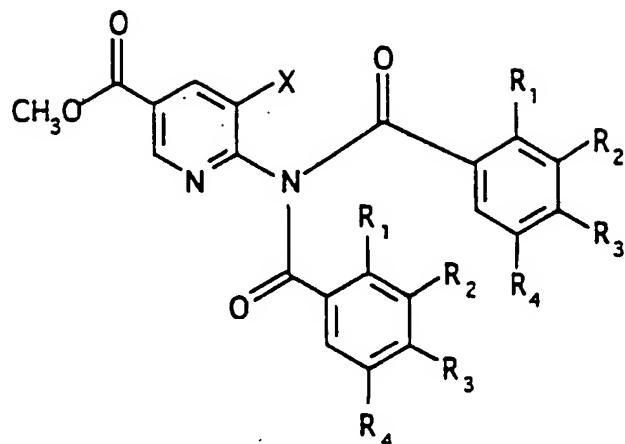
25 6-[5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 165

30 6-[2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

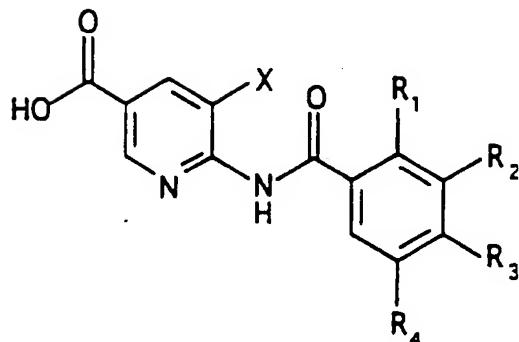
As described for Reference Example 71, the following bis acylated products (Table A) are prepared and purified by silica gel chromatography. These compounds are then hydrolysed to the acids as described in Example 71 (Table B).

Table A



Ref. Ex. No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	X	M ⁺
166	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	388
167	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	424
168	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	426
169	H	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	H	540
170	Cl	H	H	H	H	430
171	F	H	F	H	H	396
172	Br	H	H	H	H	520
173	Cl	H	F	H	H	412
174	Ph	H	Ph	H	H	512
175	Cl	H	H	Br	H	474
176	CH ₃	H	H	F	Br	
177	CH ₃	H	H	H	Br	468

M^+ is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum

Table B

<u>Ref.</u>	<u>R1</u>	<u>R2</u>	<u>R3</u>	<u>R4</u>	<u>X</u>	<u>M⁺</u>
<u>Ex. No.</u>						
178	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	256
179	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	274
180	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	274
181	H	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	H	332
182	Cl	H	H	H	H	276
183	F	H	F	H	H	278
184	Br	H	H	H	H	332
185	Cl	H	F	H	H	294
186	Ph	H	H	H	H	318
187	Cl	H	H	Br	H	356
188	CH ₃	H	H	F	Cl	
189	CH ₃	H	H	H	Br	336

M⁺ is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum.

Reference Example 190

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a stirred solution of 6-aminonicotinic acid (13.8 g, 0.1 mole) in glacial acetic acid (100 ml), bromine (16 g, 5 ml, 0.1 mole) in acetic acid (20 ml) is added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred for 8 hours at room temperature and the acetic acid is removed under reduced pressure. The yellow solid residue is dissolved in water and carefully neutralized with 30%

NH₄OH. The separated solid is filtered and washed with water to give 18 g of solid; mass spectrum: 218 (M⁺).

5

Reference Example 191

Methyl 6-amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylate

10

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid (10 g, 50 mmol) is dissolved in saturated methanolic HCl (100 ml) and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent, methanol, is removed under reduced pressure and the residue is dissolved in ice cold water. The aqueous solution is neutralized with 0.1 N NaOH and the solid which separates is filtered; washed well with water and air dried to yield 10 g of product as a solid: mass spectrum 231 (M⁺).

15

Reference Example 192

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

20

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 5.0 g methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate, 12.6 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 12.2 g of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 50 ml each of 1 M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue (9.0 g) is chromatographed on a silica gel column with hexane-ethyl acetate (3:1) as eluent to give 8.6 g of solid. This solid, mainly methyl 6-[(bis(2-methylbenzeneacetyl))-amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, is dissolved in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH added to the solution. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and the mixture concentrated under vacuum. Water (25 ml) is added and the mixture is

25

30

35

stirred and acidified with cold 1 N HCl. The mixture is chilled and the solid filtered and washed with water to give 5.9 g of off-white solid.

5

Reference Example 193

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic chloride

10

A mixture of 4.5 g of 6-[(2-methylbenzene-acetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 25 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness under vacuum. To the residue is added 20 ml of toluene and the solvent removed under vacuum. The addition and removal of toluene is repeated and the residual solid dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 5.3 g of dark brown solid.

15

Reference Example 194

2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoic acid

20

A mixture of methyl 2-iodobenzoate (12 g, 47 mmol), 2-pyridinyl-tri-n-butyl stannane (20 g, 55 mmol) and tetrakis (triphenyl phosphine) palladium (0) (2 g), is refluxed in toluene (degassed) for 48 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated under vacuum and the residue is chromatographed on a column of silica gel with 50% ethylacetate:hexane as eluent. The initial fractions (2 lits) are discarded and finally the product methyl 2-(2-pyridinyl)benzoate, is eluted and isolated as an oil. (Yield: 5.5 g): mass spectrum, 213 (M^+)

25

A mixture of the preceding compound (3.0 g, 14 mmol) and NaOH (600 mg, 15 mmol) is refluxed in MeOH:water (9:1) (50 ml) for 4 hours. When the reaction is complete, it is concentrated under vacuum and the residue dissolved in 50 ml of cold water. Neutralization with glacial acetic acid affords a solid which is filtered off and washed with water to give 2.5 g of brown solid; slightly soluble in water; mass spectrum (CI) 200 (M^+1).

30

35

Reference Example 195Ethyl 3-[N-(3-ethoxycarbonyl-2-pyridinyl)-N-(4-methylphenylsulfonyl)]aminobutane-1-carboxylate

5 A mixture of 13.4 g of ethyl 2-[(4-methyl-phenylsulfonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, 23.1 g of anhydrous potassium carbonate and 20.4 g of ethyl 3-bromobutane-1-carboxylate in 300 ml of N,N-dimethyl-formamide is heated at 110°C under argon for 6 hours.
10 The mixture is concentrated to dryness under high vacuum and to the residue is added CH₂Cl₂ and H₂O. The organic layer is separated and washed with water (3 times), treated with activated carbon and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent is removed and the residue chromatographed on a short column of silica gel. The column is eluted with 1900 ml of CH₂Cl₂, then 1300 ml of CH₂Cl₂ and finally with 4 L of 5% ethyl acetate in CH₂Cl₂. The 5% ethyl acetate in CH₂Cl₂ fractions are combined and the combined fraction dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent removed to give 16.9 g of white crystals. A 0.5 g sample is recrystallized from toluene to give white crystals (washed with hexane) (0.39 g) m.p. 129.5-130°C.

Reference Example 196Ethyl 8,9-dihydro-5-hydroxy-6H-1(4-methylphenylsulfonyl)-7H-pyrido[2,3-blazepine-6-carboxylic acid

25 To a solution of 7.85 g (70.0 mmol) of potassium *tert*-butoxide in 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran, chilled in an ice bath, is added 15.2 g (35.0 mmol) of ethyl 3-[N-(3-carbethoxy-2-pyridinyl)-N-(4-methyl-phenylsulfonyl)]aminobutane-1-carboxylate in 150 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran dropwise over 50 min. The mixture is stirred in an ice bath for 5 hours and poured in 500 ml of ice water. The mixture is brought to pH 5 with 10% HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate (4 times). The extract is dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel

5 with 10% ethyl acetate in CH₂Cl₂ as eluent. Fractions containing product are combined and the solvent removed to give 12.8 g of a pale yellow gum; Mass Spectrum (FAB) 389 (M+H); 411 (M+Na).

Reference Example 107

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-9-[(4-methylphenylsulfonyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepine-6-carboxylate,

pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one

10 A mixture of 13.2 g of ethyl 8,9-dihydro-5-hydroxy-9-[(4-methylphenylsulfonyl)-7H-pyrido[2,3-b]-azepine-6-carboxylate, 265 ml of dimethylsulfoxide and 1.52 ml of water under argon is heated at 150°C 16.5 hours. The mixture is poured into 2700 ml of ice water and the mixture chilled 16 hours. The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water and dried. The tan solid is dissolved in ethyl acetate and the solution washed with 50 ml (4 times) of water. Activated carbon is added to the solution and the mixture filtered through magnesium sulfate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 10.4 g of solid. The solid (9.24 g) is filtered through silica gel with 5% ethyl acetate in dichloromethane as solvent. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give 6.7 g of off-white solid; Mass Spectrum (CI) (M⁺+H) 317.

20 Reference Example 108

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 1-oxide

30 To a solution of 0.497 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine in 7 ml of chloroform is added 1.04 g of 3-chloroperbenzoic acid. The mixture is refluxed overnight and the solvent removed under vacuum. To the residue is added 100 ml of water and the mixture extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with H₂O, 1 N NaHCO₃, H₂O and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filter pad is washed with 10% methanol in

ethyl acetate to give 0.49 g of product as a glass
(foam), m.p. 110-125°C.

5 Reference Example 199

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one

A solution of 5.00 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-9-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one in 60 ml of 40% (v/v) sulfuric acid in acetic acid is heated at 60°C for 11 hours. The mixture is chilled and poured into 350 ml of ice water (cooled in an ice bath) with thorough stirring. To the cold mixture is added solid NaOH until the pH is 8 while keeping the temperature below 30°C. The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with ethyl acetate. The organic layer of the filtrate is separated and the aqueous layer extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer and extracts are combined and treated with activated carbon. The mixture is filtered through MgSO₄ and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 2.0 g of yellow crystals.

20 Reference Example 200

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-9-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one

To a solution of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one and 0.234 g of triethylamine in 6 ml of dichloromethane is added 0.506 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 2 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight under argon. The solution is washed with H₂O, 10% NaHCO₃ and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent is removed to give a brown oil which crystallizes. The mixture is chromatographed on silica with a waters Prep-500 instrument with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give 2.4 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 162-164°C (identified as Q-2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl derivative (2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl enolate of product) and 0.80 g of product as crystals, m.p. slowly decomposes 160-220°C.

Reference Example 201

6-(4-Aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydro

[3,4-d]-
thieno[3,2-b]azepine.

A mixture of 2.0 g of 6-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-
1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine in
40 ml of absolute ethanol is stirred under argon while
1.6 ml of hydrazine is added. The reaction mixture is
heated at 60°C for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture is
cooled to room temperature and 400 mg of 10% Pd/C added
and the reaction mixture heated at 100°C for 1.5 hours.
The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous
earth and the cake washed with methylene chloride. The
filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is
crystallized from ethyl acetate:hexane to give 1.4 g of
the desired product as yellow crystals. 242-260°C.

Reference Example 202

7-1'-(Dimethylamino)methylene-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-blazepin-9-one

A mixture of 3.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one and 20 ml of tert-butoxy-bis(dimethylamino)methane is heated on a steam bath 2 hours followed by the addition of 10 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is diluted with 100 ml of methylene chloride and filtered through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is filtered through a short column of silica gel to give 2.45 g of the desired product as a yellow foam.

Reference Example 202

6-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a mixture of 2.2 g of 7-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 40 ml of ethanol is added 341 μ l of hydrazine followed by heating

5

at 60°C for 1.5 hours. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in 100 ml of ethyl acetate and filtered through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated in vacuo to give 1.85 g of the desired product as a yellow-orange solid.

10

Reference Example 204

6-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-h]azepine

15

20

A mixture of 1.8 g of 6-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-h]azepine in 35 ml of absolute ethanol is added 5.42 g of tin (II) chloride followed by heating at reflux for 1 hour at 80°C. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is partitioned between 150 ml of ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ the reactants are stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and filtered. The organic layer is separated and washed with 30 ml of brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and filtered through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated in vacuo to give 1.55 g of a yellow-orange foam.

25

Reference Example 205

7-((Dimethylamino)methylene)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-h]azepin-8-one

30

35

A mixture of 3.2 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-h]azepin-8-one and 32 ml of tert-butoxybis(dimethylamino)methane is heated on a steam bath for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture is allowed to stand for 48 hours. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo and the concentrate is dissolved in 150 ml of methylene chloride and filtered through hydrous magnesium silicate two times. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in 25 ml of ethyl acetate and filtered. The filtrate is cooled to give 3.2 g of the desired product as a light orange solid, m.p. 214-216°C.

Reference Example 206

5 N-[4-[(Dimethylaminomethylene)l-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl-2-methylbenzamide

10 A mixture of 100 mg of N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide and 1 ml of tert-butoxybis-(dimethylamino)methane is heated at 50°C for 1 hour. To the reaction mixture is added 3 ml of methylene chloride and heating continued for an additional 2 hours at 60-70°C. The volatiles are evaporated to a residue which is dissolved in 25 ml of methylene chloride and filtered through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by chromatography on preparative thick layer silica gel plates by elution with ethyl acetate to afford 20 mg of the desired product as a light yellow solid.

15

20

Reference Example 207

25 2-Chloro-7-[(dimethylaminomethylene)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one]

30 A mixture of 1.1 g of 2-chloro-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one and 11 ml of tertbutoxy-bis(dimethylamino)methane is heated at reflux for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture is allowed to stand for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo and the concentrate is purified by column chromatography on silica gel to give 520 mg of the desired product as a non-crystalline solid.

Reference Example 208

35 8-Chloro-2,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2-methyl-6-(4-nitrobenzoyl)pyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine

A mixture of 500 mg of 2-chloro-7-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 15 ml of absolute

5

methanol is stirred under argon while 131 μ l of N-methylhydrazine is added. The reaction mixture is heated at 80°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and concentrated in vacuo to give 420 mg of the desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 209

10

6-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

15

As described for Reference Example 204, 6-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepine is reduced with stannus chloride (SnCl_2) in ethanol to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 210

20

5-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-4,10-dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepine

As described for Reference Example 204 5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,10-dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepine is reduced with stannus chloride (SnCl_2) in ethanol to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 211

25

5-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-6,10-dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[3,2-e]azepine

As described for Reference Example 204 5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-6,10-dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[3,2-e]azepine is reduced with stannus chloride (SnCl_2) in ethanol to give the product as a solid.

30

Reference Example 212

5-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

35

A solution of 2.96 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 3.03 g of triethylamine and 4.45 g of 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 30 ml of dichloromethane is stirred under argon at room temperature for 4 hours. The mixture is poured into water and the organic layer separated and washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , H_2O and

5 brine. The organic layer is dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness to give 6.35 g of solid. Trituration with 25 ml of dichloromethane gives 5.50 g of light yellow solid. A sample from a prior run in trituration gives white crystals, m.p. 231-233°C.

10 Reference Example 213

5-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]-azepine, 1-oxide

15 A mixture of 1.18 g of 5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine and 1.37 g of 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid in 10 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature overnight under argon. The mixture is diluted with 15 ml of dichloromethane and the solution washed with 1 N NaHCO_3 , H_2O , brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filter pad is washed with 50 ml of ethyl acetate. Then the filter pad is washed with ethyl acetate-methanol (5:1) and the ethyl acetate-methanol wash collected and the solvent removed to give 0.86 g of crystals, m.p. 231-233°C.

20 Reference Example 214

25 5-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 1-oxide

30 A mixture of 0.497 g of 5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine and 0.38 g of 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid in 7 ml of dichloromethane is refluxed under argon for 16 hours. The solvent is removed under argon and to the residue is added water. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract washed with 1 N NaHCO_3 , H_2O and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The pad is washed with ethyl acetate and then with ethyl acetate-methanol (9:1). The ethyl acetate-methanol wash is collected

separately and the solvent removed under vacuum to give the product as a glass, m.p. 110-125°C.

5 Reference Example 215

5-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, O-acetate

A mixture of 0.49 g of 5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 1-oxide in 5 ml of acetic anhydride is heated in an oil bath at 90° for 36 hours. Toluene (25 ml) is added and the mixture concentrated under high vacuum. The process is repeated and the residue chromatographed on silica gel preparative plates with ethyl acetate as solvent to give 0.24 g of crystals, m.p. 162-165°C.
10 Anal. Calc'd for C₁₈H₁₅ClN₃O₅. C, 55.5; H, 4.1; N, 10.8.
15 Found: C, 55.5; H, 4.0; N, 10.6.

20 Reference Example 216

5-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, O-acetate

25 A mixture of 0.58 g of 5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 1-oxide and 5 ml of acetic anhydride in 10 ml of dichloromethane is refluxed for 2 days. An additional 2 ml of acetic anhydride is added and the mixture refluxed 2 days. To the mixture is added toluene (30 ml-twice) and the solvent removed under high vacuum. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel preparative plates with ethyl acetate as solvent to give 0.37 g of crystals, m.p. 135-137°C.
30

Reference Example 217

5-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

35 To a mixture of 0.5 g of 5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, O-acetate in 10 ml of methanol-water (8:2) is added KHCO₃ and the mixture stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum, diluted with

10 ml of water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed to give the product as a solid. Chromatography on silica gel with ethyl acetate as solvent gives crystals, m.p. 182-185°C.

Reference Example 218

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-9-one

A mixture of 0.5 g of 5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine in 5 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide and 1 ml of acetic anhydride is stirred at room temperature 16 hours. To the mixture is added 10 ml of water and 1 N NaHCO_3 . The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract washed with water, 1 N NaHCO_3 , brine and dried. The solvent is removed to give a solid. chromatography on silica gel with ethyl acetate as solvent gives the product as a solid, m.p. 188-190°C.

Reference Example 219

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-9H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-9-one

As described for Reference Example 218, 5-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine is reacted with dimethylsulfoxide-acetic anhydride to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 220

6,7,8,9-Tetrahydro-9-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one

To a solution of 2.11 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added 3.28 g of solid NaHCO_3 . To the stirred mixture under argon is added dropwise 3.14 g of 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 30 ml of dichloromethane containing 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the mixture is stirred overnight. To the mixture is added tetrahydrofuran and water and the mixture filtered. The solid is washed with

chloroform (solid dissolved) and the organic layer of
the filtrate separated. The organic layer is filtered
5 through MgSO₄ and the filtrate concentrated to dryness
to give a white solid. The solid from two runs is
dissolved in ethyl acetate-CH₂Cl₂ (2:8) and filtered
through short silica gel column and the product fraction
collected. The solvent is removed and the solid dis-
10 solved in hot chloroform-methanol and the solution
treated with activated carbon. The mixture is filtered
through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate concentrated
to dryness under vacuum to give 7.73 g of white
crystals; Mass Spectrum (CI) (CH₄): 312 (MH⁺).

15 Reference Example 221

6-[Dimethylamino)methylene]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-9-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one

To a slurry of 0.50 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-9-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one in 10 ml
20 of tetrahydrofuran under argon is added 0.70 g of tert-butoxy-bis(dimethylamino)methane and the mixture is
stirred at room temperature overnight. The volatiles
are removed under vacuum and the residue in ethyl
acetate-CH₂Cl₂ (2:8) filtered through a short column of
silica gel. The silica gel is washed with ethyl acetate
25 (discard) and then with chloroform containing 3%
methanol to give 0.51 g of the product as a yellow
solid.

20 Reference Example 222

6-[Dimethylamino)methylene]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-9-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one

To a solution of 0.20 g of 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-9-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one
30 in 2 ml of dioxane is added 0.504 g of tert-butoxybis-(dimethylamino)methane and the mixture is stirred at
room temperature. The volatiles are removed under high
vacuum. The residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate
35 -CH₂Cl₂ (3:7) and the solution passed through a short

5 column of silica gel (ethyl acetate -CH₂Cl₂) eluate is discarded). Elution with ethyl acetate -CH₂Cl₂ (8:2) gives the product as a yellow glass (0.19 g); Mass Spectrum (CI) (CH₄): 401 (MH⁺).

Reference Example 223

1,4,5,6-Tetrahydro-6-(4-nitrobenzoyl)pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepine

10 To a slurry of 0.51 g of 6-[(dimethylamino)-methylene]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-9-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5H-pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-5-one in 17 ml of methanol under argon is added 0.14 g of hydrazine hydrate. The mixture is stirred overnight and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is dissolved in hot chloroform-methanol (95:5) and filtered through silica gel and washed filter pad with chloroform-methanol (95:5). The filtrate is concentrated to dryness to give 0.48 g of yellow solid.

20 Reference Example 224

1,4,5,6-Tetrahydro-6-(4-aminobenzoyl)pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepine

25 To a slurry of 0.170 g of 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-6-(4-nitrobenzoyl)pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepine in 8 ml of ethanol under argon is added 0.573 g of stannous chloride dihydrate (SnCl₂·2H₂O). The mixture is refluxed for 1 hour, diluted with ice-water and made basic with 10% NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture is stirred 3.5 hours and extracted with chloroform (3 times). The extract is dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent removed under vacuum. Chromatography on silica gel with ethyl acetate as eluent gives 0.10 g of off-white crystals.

30 Reference Example 225

8-[(Dimethylamino)methylene]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-9-one

35 As described for Reference Example 221.
5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9H-pyrido[3,2-b]-

azepin-9-one is reacted with tert-butoxybis(dimethylamino)methane to give the product as a solid.

5 Reference Example 226

1,4,5,6-Tetrahydro-6-(4-nitrobenzoyl)pyrazolo[3,4-d]-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine

As described for Reference Example 223, 8-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-9-one is reacted 10 with hydrazine hydrate to give the product as a solid, m.p. 255-256°C.

15 Reference Example 227

5,6-Dihydro-6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-4H-isoxazolo[5,4-d]-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

A mixture of 0.50 g of 7-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one, 0.234 g of hydroxylamine, hydrochloride and 16 ml of methanol is refluxed for 4 hours. The mixture is chilled and filtered and the solid washed with a small amount of cold methanol and cold ethyl acetate to give 0.41 g of tan crystals, m.p. 218-222°C. The preceding compound in ethanol is 20 refluxed with SnCl₂·H₂O for one hour, cooled and diluted with ice-water. The mixture is made basic with 10% NaHCO₃ and is stirred for 3.5 hours at room temperature. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract washed with brine. The extract is dried 25 (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane with ice-water. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract washed with brine. The extract is dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

30 Reference Example 228

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-9-one

A mixture of 0.313 g of 5-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-9-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]azepine, 4 ml 35 of CH₂Cl₂ and 0.75 ml of dimethylsulfoxide is chilled to -25°C and 0.405 g of cyanuric chloride is added. The

5 mixture is allowed to stand at -25°C for 6.5 hours and
0.41 g of triethylamine is added. The mixture is
stirred 10 minutes and poured into water. The mixture
is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract washed
with water, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is
removed to give 0.39 g of solid. Chromatography on
silica gel with ethyl acetate as solvent gives 0.17 g of
crystals, m.p. 188-190°C.
10

Reference Example 229

Methyl 4-[[(1,1'-Biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino]-2-
methoxybenzoate

15 A mixture of 10.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxylic acid in 75 ml of methylene chloride and 12.52
g of oxalyl chloride is stirred at room temperature for
15 hours. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give
11.06 g of an oil. A 2.16 g portion of the above oil in
25 ml of methylene chloride is reacted with 1.81 g of
methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.30 g of N,N-
20 disopropylethylamine by stirring at room temperature
for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with
water, saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 and the organic layer
dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through
hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added to the
filtrate at the boil to give 3.20 g of the desired
product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 115-117°C.
25

Reference Example 230

Methyl 4-[[(1,1'-Biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino]-2-
chlorobenzoate

30 A solution of 2.37 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is
added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of
methyl 4-amino-2-chlorobenzoate and 1.49 g of N,N-
diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride.
35 The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for
18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO_3
and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer

5

is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 1.1 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 132-134°C.
 $M+H=365$

10

15

20

25

30

35

Reference Example 231

4-[(1,1'-Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 4-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino)-2-chlorobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.0 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 0.1 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 217-219°C

Reference Example 232

4-[(1,1'-Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-3-methoxybenzoyl Chloride

A solution of 2.69 g of 4-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino)-3-methoxy benzoic acid in 5 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour under Argon. The volatiles are removed in vacuo to give a residue which is stirred with hexane to give 2.58 g of crystalline solid, m.p. 121-123°C. $M+=361$.

Reference Example 233

Methyl 4-[(1,1'-Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate

A mixture of 10.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 75 ml of methylene chloride and 12.52 g of oxalyl chloride is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 11.66 g of an oil. A 7.5 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to a solution of 4.53 g of methyl-4-aminobenzoate and 4.3 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at

room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, and
5 saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer
dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through
hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added to the
filtrate at the boil to give 8.38 g of the desired
product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 163-165°C.

Reference Example 234

4-[[[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoic Acid

A 3.15 g sample of methyl 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoate is refluxed for 8 hours in 100 ml of ethyl alcohol and 2.5 ml of 10N sodium hydroxide. The cooled reaction mixture is acidified with [(? acid)] and the desired product collected and dried to give 2.9 g of the desired product as a solid m.p. 246-249°C.
M+H=318.

Reference Example 235

4-[[[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 1.39 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. Cold hexane is added and the crystalline solid collected and dried to give 1.34 g of the desired product, m.p. 118-120°C.

Reference Example 236

2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 5.0 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 5.74 g of the desired product as an oil. M⁺=227 as methyl ester.

Reference Example 237

Methyl 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate

To 3.03 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 3.12 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 75 ml of methylene chloride is added 5.54 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl chloride and the reactants stirred at room temperature

5

for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two times and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 5.04 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 138-139°C.

Reference Example 238

10

Sodium 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]aminobenzoate

15

A mixture of 4.90 g of methyl 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate in 100 ml of absolute ethanol and 3.50 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. The aqueous phase is filtered and the resulting solid collected and dried to give 4.25 g of the desired product m.p. 340-346°C.

Reference Example 239

4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid

20

A mixture of 4.0 g sodium 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate is suspended in water and the pH adjusted to 5 with acetic acid. The solid is collected by filtration and dried at 80°C in vacuo to give 3.75 g of the desired product, 246-247°C.
 $M^+=332$.

25

Reference Example 240

4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]aminobenzoyl Chloride

30

A mixture of 2.0 g of 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 1.53 g of the desired product as an oil. $M^+=346$ as methyl ester.

Reference Example 241

Methyl 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]-2-chlorobenzoate

35

A mixture of 5.0 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 5.70 g of an oil. A 2.85 g portion of the above

oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added to a solution of 50 ml of methylene chloride containing 1.85 g of methyl 4-amino-2-chlorobenzoate and 1.65 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two times and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 2.96 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 133-135°C. M⁺=380.

Reference Example 242

Methyl 4-[(2-Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino-3-methoxybenzoate

A solution of 2.85 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)-benzoyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.64 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.61 g of N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 2.2 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 129-131°C. M⁺=376.

Reference Example 243

2-Chloro-4-[(2-Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 2.8 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]aminobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 1.84 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 2.6 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 184-187°C. M⁺H=366.

Reference Example 2443-Methoxy-4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]aminobenzoate

5 A mixture of 2.05 g of methyl 4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]amino]-3-methoxybenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 1.4 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 1.87 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 176-178°C. M⁺H=362.

10

Reference Example 2453-Methoxy-4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]aminobenzoyl Chloride

15 A mixture of 1.71 g of 3-methoxy-4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 1.71 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 130-135°C. M⁺=376 as the methyl ester.

20

Reference Example 246[4'-(Trifluoromethyl)-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxyl Chloride

25 A mixture of 5.0 g of 4'-(trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 5.36 g of the desired product as a colorless oil. M⁺=280 as methyl ester.

30

Reference Example 247Methyl 2-Chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)-1,1'-biphenyl]carbonyl]aminobenzoate

35 A solution of 3.13 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 1.43 g

of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 3.36 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 164-165°C. M⁺=396.

Reference Example 248

3-Methoxy-4-[(4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 2.0 g of 3-methoxy-4-[(4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic acid in 20 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 1.92 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 136-138°C.

Reference Example 249

3-Methoxy-4-[(4'-trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.78 g of methyl 3-methoxy-4-[(4'-trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.20 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 3.49 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 213-215°C.

Reference Example 250

Methyl 3-Methoxy-4-[(4'-trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate

A solution of 3.56 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of

5 methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.81 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.62 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at 10 the boil to give 3.9 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 112-113°C.

Reference Example 251

2-Chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoyl Chloride

15 A mixture of 1.39 g of 2-chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]-benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is concentrated to a residue in vacuo to a residue. Cold 20 hexane is added to the residue and the solid collected and dried to give 1.39 g of the desired product.

Reference Example 252

2-Chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoic acid

25 A mixture of 3.83 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-(((4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)-amino)benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.20 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is 30 extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 3.42 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 187-189°C.

Reference Example 253Methyl 2-chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1.1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate

5 A solution of 3.56 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of
methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold
solution of 1.86 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-aminobenzoate
10 and 1.6 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of
methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at
room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water,
saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer
dried(Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a
15 pad of hydrous magnesium silicate(3X) and hexane added
to the filtrate at the boil to give 4.0 g of the desired
product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 130-132°C.

Reference Example 2544-[[[4'-(Trifluoromethyl)[1.1'-biphenyl]carbonyl]amino]benzoic Acid

20 A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 4-[[[4'-(tri-
fluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate
in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.0 ml of 10 N sodium
hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water
is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with
25 methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with
acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried
in vacuo at 80°C to give 2.93 g of the desired product
as a crystalline solid, m.p. 243-245°C. M⁺=385.

Reference Example 255Methyl 6-[[3-(2-Methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate

30 To a stirred solution of 3 g of methyl 6-
aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 4 ml of N,N-diiso-
propylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride is
35 added dropwise a solution of 6.4 g of 2-methylpyridine-
3-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride. The
reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2

5

hours and quenched with water. The organic layer is washed with water, dried($MgSO_4$), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is stirred with ether and the resulting solid collected and air dried to give 6.8 g of the desired product. $M^+=390$.

10

Reference Example 256

6-[[3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic Acid

15

To a solution of 6.5 g of methyl 6-[(3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate in 100 ml of 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methyl alcohol is added 20 ml of 5N NaOH. The reaction mixture is stirred overnight and evaporated in vacuo to a residue. The residue is dissolved in water and neutralized with acetic acid. The separated solid is filtered and air-dried to give 3.0 g of the desired product. $M^+=257$.

20

Reference Example 257

Methyl 6-[[[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate

25

To a solution of 1.5 g of methyl 6-amino-pyridine-3-carboxylate in 100 ml of methylene chloride is added 3 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine at room temperature. To the stirred reaction mixture is slowly added a solution of 2.5 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 4 hours and then quenched with water. The organic layer is washed well with water and dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a solid residue. The residue is stirred with ether, filtered and dried to give 3.0 g of the desired product: $M^+=332$.

30

35

Reference Example 258

6-[[[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic Acid

To a stirred solution of 2.5 g of methyl 6-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-

carboxylate in 50 ml of 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol is added 10 ml of 5N sodium hydroxide and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in water and neutralized with acetic acid. The separated colorless solid is filtered and air dried to give 2.0 g of the desired product: M⁺=318.

Example 1

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

To an ice bath cooled mixture of 296 mg of 6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 3.5 ml of methylene chloride is added 417 µl of triethylamine followed by a solution of 483 mg of 2-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl chloride in 1.5 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under argon. An additional 40 ml of methylene chloride is added followed by 20 ml of water. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 2N citric acid, 1M NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated in vacuo to give a residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate:hexane to give 520 mg of a white solid. To a suspension of 340 mg of the preceding compound in 5 ml methanol is added 1.2 ml of 1N NaOH. The reactants are stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is diluted with 100 ml of ethyl acetate and filtered. The filtrate is washed with 30 ml each of water, brine and dried (NaSO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is stirred with ethyl acetate:hexane to give 255 mg of white crystalline solid, m.p. 258-266°C.

Example 2N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

5 To an ice bath cooled mixture of 297 mg of 6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 3.5 ml of methylene chloride is added 417 μ l of triethylamine followed by a solution of 10 432 mg of 2-methyl-5-fluorobenzoyl chloride in 1.5 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under argon. An additional 50 ml of methylene chloride is added followed by 20 ml of water. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 2N citric acid, 1M NaHCO₃ and brine. The 15 organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated in vacuo to give 570 mg of a foam residue. To a suspension of 564 mg of the preceding compound in 4 ml of methanol and 4 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 3.0 ml of 1N NaOH. The reactants are stirred at room temperature 20 for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with 2 ml of 1N HCl and evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is partitioned between 50 ml of ethyl acetate and 20 ml of water. The resulting solid is collected, washed with 25 ethyl acetate and dried to give 305 mg of the desired product as white crystals, m.p. 310-312°C.

Example 3N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

30 To an ice bath cooled mixture of 345 mg of 6-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo-[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 3.5 ml of methylene chloride is added 417 μ l of triethylamine is added a 35 solution of 432 mg of 2-methyl-5-fluorobenzoyl chloride in 1.5 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under argon.

An additional 40 ml of methylene chloride is added followed by 20 ml of water. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 2N citric acid, 1M NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated in vacuo to give a foam residue. To a solution of 800 mg of the preceding compound in 4 ml methanol and 4 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 2.7 ml of 1N NaOH. The reactants are stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture is neutralized with 1N HCl and evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is diluted with 50 ml of methylene chloride and water and then filtered. The collected solid is dried at 60°C to give 275 mg of the desired product as an off-white solid, m.p. 310-312°C.

Example 4

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbononyl]-2-chlorophenyl-5-chloro-2-fluorobenzamide

To an ice bath cooled mixture of 345 mg of 6-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo-[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 3.5 ml of methylene chloride under argon is added 417 µl of triethylamine followed by a solution of 482 mg of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzoyl chloride in 1.5 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under argon. An additional 40 ml of methylene chloride is added followed by 20 ml of water. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 2N citric acid, 1M NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated in vacuo to give 650 mg of the desired product as a solid residue. To a solution of 500 mg of the preceding compound in 4 ml methanol and 4 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 1.51 ml of 1N NaOH. The reactants are stirred at room temperature for 18

hours. The reaction mixture is neutralized with 1N HCl and evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is diluted with 50 ml of chloroform and washed with water, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate containing ethyl alcohol. The collected solid is dried to give 215 mg of the desired product as an off white solid, m.p. 282-288°C.

Example 5

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]2,4-dichlorobenzamide

To an ice bath cooled mixture of 290 mg of 2,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2-methyl-6-(4-aminobenzoyl)pyrazolo-[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 4.0 ml of methylene chloride and 2.0 ml of dioxane under argon is added 186 μl of triethylamine followed by 156 μl of 2,4-dichlorobenzoyl chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under argon. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in 50 ml of methylene chloride and washed with 20 ml each of water, 1N NaHCO_3 , 2N citric acid and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give a foam residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 330 mg of the desired product as a white crystalline solid, m.p. 265-267°C.

Example 6

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]cyclohexane carboxamide

To an ice bath cooled mixture of 260 mg of 2,4,6-tetrahydro-2-methyl-6-(4-aminobenzoyl)pyrazolo-[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 4.0 ml of methylene chloride and 2.0 ml of dioxane under argon is added 168 μl of triethylamine followed by 134 μl of cyclohexane-carbonyl chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

room temperature for 18 hours under argon. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in 60 ml of methylene chloride and washed with 20 ml each of water, 1N NaHCO₃, 2N citric acid and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄) and filtered. The filtrate is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo to give a residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 185 mg of the desired product as a white crystalline solid, m.p. 240-242°C.

Example 7

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl-2-methylbenzamide

To a solution of 400 mg of 6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 12.0 ml of dioxane under argon is added 65 mg of sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil). After stirring for 15 minutes, 176 µl of o-toluenoyl chloride is added. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under argon. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in 40 ml of methylene chloride and washed with 20 ml each of water and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄) and filtered. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give a residue which is purified by chromatography on silica gel plates by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane 100 mg of N-[4-[(4,5-dihydro-2-(2-methylbenzoyl)pyrazolo[4,3-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl-2-methylbenzamide as a white foam and 200 mg of the product as a white foam.

Example 8

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 2, 2 mmol of 6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido-

[3,2-*b*]azepine is reacted with 2.2 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

5 As described for Example 8, the following compounds are prepared.

Example 9

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-blazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonylphenyl]-2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzamide

10 Example 10

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-blazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

15 Example 11

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-blazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonylphenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

20 Example 12

N-[5-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-blazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

25 To a solution of 2 mmol 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-pyrazolo[3,4-*d*]pyrido[3,2-*b*]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine in 25 ml of dichloromethane is added 4.2 mmol of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. After stirring over the mixture is worked-up as described for Example 1 and the initial solid treated with 1N NaOH in methanol as described for Example 1 to give the product as a solid.

30 Example 13

N-[5-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-blazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

35 To a solution of 2 mmol of 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-*d*]thieno[3,2-*b*]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine in 25 ml of dichloromethane is added 4.2 mmol of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. After stirring overnight, the mixture is worked-up as described for Example 1, and the

initial solid treated with 1N NaOH as described for Example 1 to give the product as a solid.

5 Example 14

N-[4-[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a solution of 2 mmol of 5-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-4,10-dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine in 25 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.1 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride. After stirring at room temperature overnight, the mixture is washed with H₂O, 1M NaHCO₃ and brine. The solution is dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed to give the product as a solid.

10 Example 15

N-[4-[(6,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

20 To a solution of 2 mmol of 5-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-6,10-dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine in 25 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.1 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride. After stirring at room temperature for 16 hours, the solution is washed with H₂O, 1M NaHCO₃ and brine. The solution is dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed to give the product as a solid.

25 Example 16

30 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-4,5-dihdropyrazolo [3,4-d]-pyrido[2,3-b]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine is stirred with 4.2 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in dichloromethane to give a solid. The solid is stirred with 1N NaOH in methanol and the mixture

-110-

worked-up as for Example 1 to give the product as a solid.

Example 17

N-[5-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 13, 4,5-dihydro-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepine is reacted with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 18

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonylphenyl]1,1'-biphenyl-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-4,5-dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]-pyrido[2,3-b]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine is stirred with [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in dichloromethane for 16 hours at room temperature. The initial solid is stirred with 1N NaOH in methanol as described in Example 1 to give the product as a solid.

Example 19

N-[5-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl]1,1'-biphenyl-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 13, a solution of 2.0 mmol of 4,5-dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine is stirred with 4.2 mmol of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in dichloromethane at room temperature for 16 hours to give the product as a solid.

Example 20

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl-3-phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 3, a solution of 2 mmol of 4-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-4,5-dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepine and 10 mmol of triethylamine

-111-

5

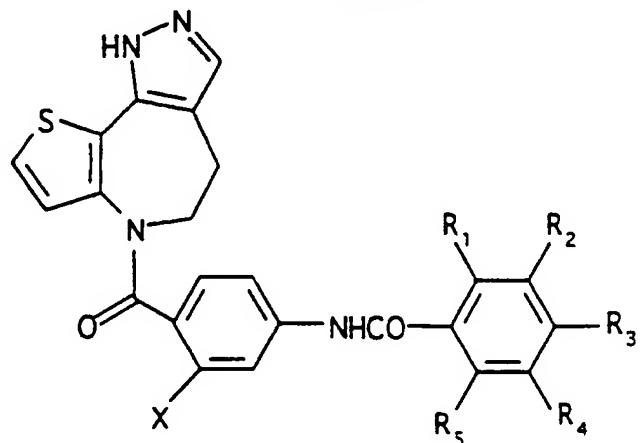
is stirred with 4.2 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in dichloromethane at room temperature to give a solid. The solid is stirred with 1N NaOH in methanol as described for Example 2 to give the product as a solid.

The following compounds are prepared as described for Example 1 (Table A).

10

Table A

15



20

25

30

35

Ex.No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
21	C1	H	H	H	H	H
22	C1	H	H	H	H	C1
23	C1	H	C1	H	H	H
24	C1	H	C1	H	H	C1
25	C1	H	H	C1	H	H
26	C1	H	H	C1	H	C1
27	F	H	H	C1	H	H
28	F	H	H	C1	H	C1
29	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
30	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	C1
31	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
32	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	C1
33	OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
34	OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	C1
35	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
36	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H	C1
37	C1	H	H	H	C1	H
38	C1	H	H	H	C1	C1
39	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	H
40	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	C1
41	S-CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
42	S-CH ₃	H	H	H	H	C1
43	CF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
44	CF ₃	H	H	H	H	C1
45	CF ₃	H	F	H	H	H
46	CF ₃	H	F	H	H	C1
47	C1	H	H	F	H	H
48	C1	H	H	F	H	C1
49	NO ₂	H	H	H	H	H
50	NO ₂	H	H	H	H	C1
51	NH ₂	H	H	H	H	H
52	NH ₂	H	H	H	H	C1

-113-

Ex. No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
5	53	N(CH ₃) ₂	H	H	H	H
	54	N(CH ₃) ₂	H	H	H	Cl
	55	OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H
	56	OCH ₃	H	H	H	Cl
	57	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
10	58	Cl	Cl	H	H	Cl
	59	CF ₃	H	H	H	F
	60	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H
	61	NHCH ₃	H	H	H	H
	62	NHCH ₃	H	H	H	Cl
	63	H	CF ₃	H	H	H
15	64	H	CF ₃	H	H	Cl

20

25

30

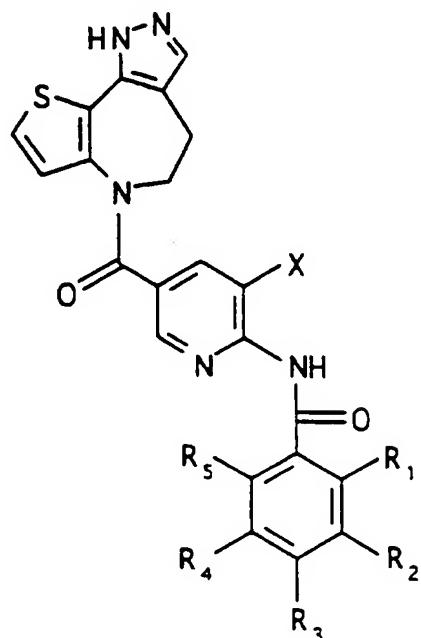
35

As described for Example 1, the following compounds are prepared (Table B).

5

Table B

10



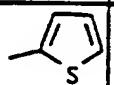
15

20

25

30

35

Ex.No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
65	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
66	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	H
67	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	H
68	H	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	H	H
69	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
70	F	H	F	H	H	H
71	Br	H	H	H	H	H
72	Cl	H	F	H	H	H
73	Ph	H	H	H	H	H
74	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H
75	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	Br
76	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	Cl
77	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
78	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
79	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
80	Cl	H	H	CF ₃	H	H
81	Cl	H	H	H	F	H
82	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
83	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
84		H	H	H	H	H
85		H	H	H	H	H
86	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	H
87	Cl	H	H	F	H	Cl
88	Cl	H	F	H	H	Cl
89	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
90	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
91	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
92	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H	H

-116-
Table B (cont'd)

Ex.No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	R ₆
93	-CF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
94	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
95	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
95	Cl	H	NO ₂	H	H	H
97	CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	H
98	F	H	H	Cl	H	H
99	Cl	H	H	NH ₂	H	H
100	F	CF ₃	H	H	H	H
101	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H	H
102	Cl	H	H	-SCH ₃	H	H
103	F	H	H	H	CF ₃	H
104	F	H	CF ₃	H	H	H
105	CF ₃	H	F	H	H	H
106	NO ₂	H	H	H	H	H
107	F	H	H	H	H	H
108	Cl	H	NH ₂	H	H	H

20

25

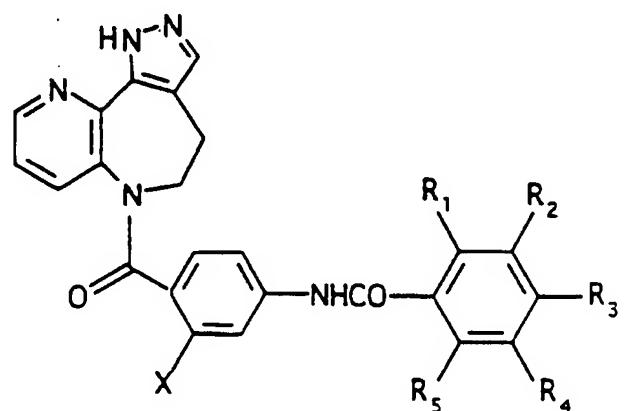
30

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 2 (Table C).

5

Table C

10



15

20

25

30

35

Ex.No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
5	109	C1	H	H	H	H
	110	C1	H	H	H	C1
	111	C1	H	C1	H	H
	112	C1	H	C1	H	C1
	113	C1	H	H	C1	H
10	114	C1	H	H	C1	H
	115	F	H	H	C1	H
	116	F	H	H	C1	C1
	117	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
	118	CH ₃	H	H	H	C1
15	119	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H
	120	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	C1
	121	OCH ₃	H	H	H	H
	122	OCH ₃	H	H	H	C1
	123	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H
20	124	OCF ₃	H	H	H	C1
	125	C1	H	H	H	H
	126	C1	H	H	C1	C1
	127	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃
	128	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃
25	129	S-CH ₃	H	H	H	H
	130	S-CH ₃	H	H	H	C1
	131	CF ₃	H	H	H	H
	132	CF ₃	H	H	H	C1
	133	CF ₃	H	F	H	H
30	134	CF ₃	H	F	H	C1
	135	C1	H	H	F	H
	136	C1	H	H	F	H
	137	NO ₂	H	H	H	H
	138	NO ₂	H	H	H	C1
35	139	NH ₂	H	H	H	H
	140	NH ₂	H	H	H	C1

-119-
Table B (cont'd)

Ex. No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
5	141	N(CH ₃) ₂	H	H	H	H
	142	N(CH ₃) ₂	H	H	H	Cl
	143	OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H
	144	OCH ₃	H	H	H	Cl
	145	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
	146	Cl	Cl	H	H	Cl
	147	CF ₃	H	H	F	H
	148	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H
	149	NHCH ₃	H	H	H	H
	150	NHCH ₃	H	H	H	Cl
10	151	H	CF ₃	H	H	H
	152	H	CF ₃	H	H	Cl
15						

20

25

30

35

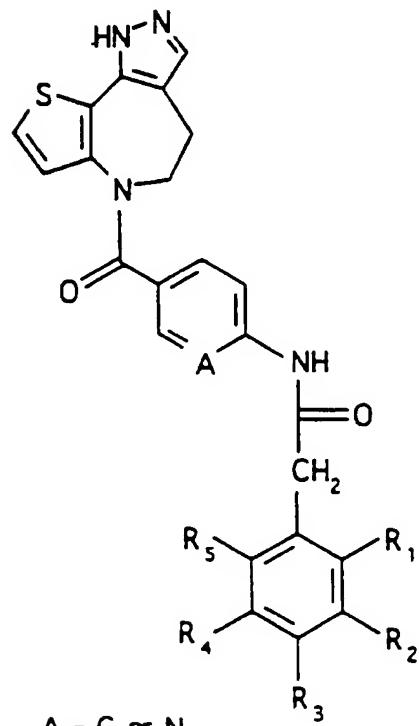
-120-

5

As described for Example 2, the following
compounds are prepared.

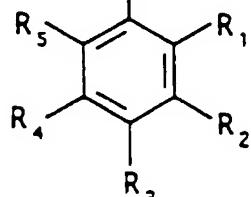
Table D

10



15

20



A = C or N

25

30

35

	Ex. No.	R₁	R₂	R₃	R₄	R₅	A
5	153	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	C
	154	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	N
	155	CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	C
	156	Cl	H	H	H	H	C
10	157	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	C
	158	Cl	H	H	H	H	N
	159	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	C
	160	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	N
	161	Cl	H	H	F	H	C
15	162	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	C
	163	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	N
	164	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H	C
	165	-OCH ₃	H	H	-OCH ₃	H	C
	166	-OCH ₃	H	H	-OCH ₃	H	N
20	167	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H	N
	168	CH ₂	F	H	H	H	C
	169	H	F	H	H	H	N
	170	CH ₃	-CH ₃	H	H	H	C
	171	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	C
25	172	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	N
	173	F	Cl	H	H	H	C
	174	F	H	Cl	H	H	N
	175	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H	C
	176	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H	N
30	177	F	H	H	Cl	H	C
	178	F	H	H	Cl	H	N
	179	F	H	H	H	Cl	C
	180	H	-CF ₃	H	H	H	C
	181	H	-CF ₃	H	H	H	N
35	182	CF ₃	H	H	H	H	C
	183	-OCF ₃	H	F	H	H	C
	184	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	C

As described for Example 5, the following compounds are prepared (Table E).

5

10

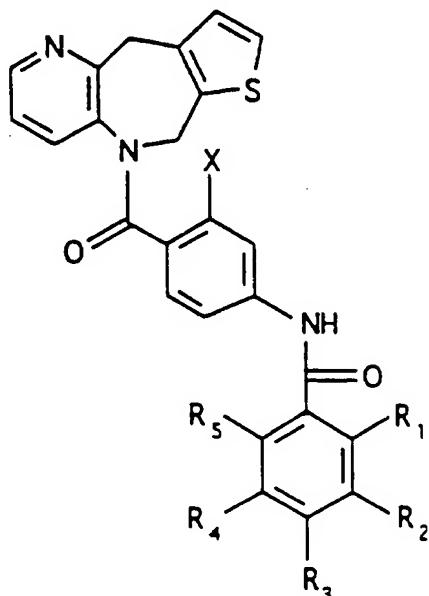
15

20

25

30

35

Table E

Ex. No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
185	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
186	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	H
187	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	H
188	CH ₂ Ph	H	H	H	H	Cl
189	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
190	F	H	F	H	H	H
191	Br	H	H	H	H	H
192	Cl	H	F	H	H	H
193	Ph	H	H	H	H	H
194	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H
195	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	Br
196	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	Cl
197	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
198	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
199	Cl	H	H	F	H	H

-123-

Ex. No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
---------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	---

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

200	Cl	H	H	CF ₃	H	H
201	Cl	H	H	H	F	H
202	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
203	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
204		H	H	H	H	H
205		H	H	H	H	H
206	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	H
207	Cl	H	H	F	H	Cl
208	Cl	H	F	H	H	Cl
209	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
210	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
211	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
212	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
213	-CF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
214	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
215	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
216	Cl	H	NO ₂	H	H	H
217	CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	H
218	F	H	H	Cl	H	H
219	Cl	H	H	NH ₂	H	H
220	F	CF ₃	H	H	H	H
221	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H	H
222	Cl	H	H	-SCH ₃	H	H
223	F	H	H	H	CF ₃	H
224	F	H	CF ₃	H	H	H
225	CF ₃	H	F	H	H	H
226	NO ₂	H	H	H	H	H
227	F	H	H	H	H	H
228	Cl	H	NH ₂	H	H	H

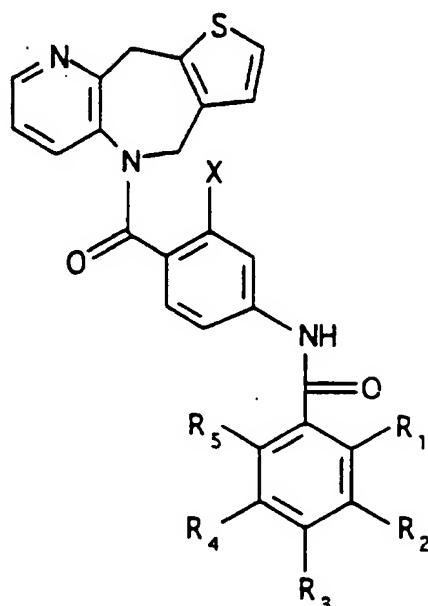
As described for Example 5, the following compounds are prepared (Table F).

5

10

15

20

Table F

25

30

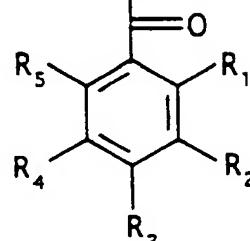
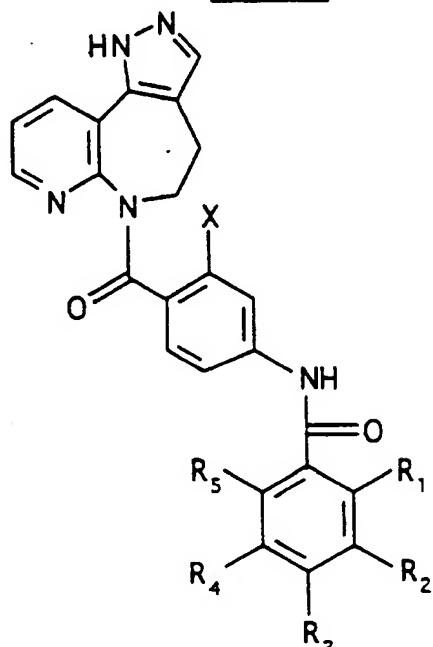
35

Ex. No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
229	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
230	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	H
231	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	H
232	CH ₂ Ph	H	H	H	H	Cl
233	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
234	F	H	F	H	H	H
235	Br	H	H	H	H	H
236	Cl	H	F	H	H	H
237	Ph	H	H	H	H	H
238	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H
239	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	Br
240	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	Cl
241	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
242	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
243	Cl	H	H	F	H	H

Ex.No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
244	Cl	H	H	CF ₃	H	H
245	Cl	H	H	H	F	H
246	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
247	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
248		H	H	H	H	H
249		H	H	H	H	H
250	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	H
251	Cl	H	H	F	H	Cl
252	Cl	H	F	H	H	Cl
253	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
254	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
255	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
256	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
257	-CF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
258	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
259	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
260	Cl	H	NO ₂	H	H	H
261	CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	H
262	F	H	H	Cl	H	H
263	Cl	H	H	NH ₂	H	H
264	F	CF ₃	H	H	H	H
265	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H	H
266	Cl	H	H	-SCH ₃	H	H
267	F	H	H	H	CF ₃	H
268	F	H	CF ₃	H	H	H
269	CF ₃	H	F	H	H	H
270	NO ₂	H	H	H	H	H
271	F	H	H	H	H	H
272	Cl	H	NH ₂	H	H	H

As described for Example 2, the following compounds are prepared (Table G).

Table G



5

10

15

20

25

30

35

Ex. No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
273	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
274	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	H
275	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	H
276	CH ₂ Ph	H	H	H	H	Cl
277	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
278	F	H	F	H	H	H
279	Br	H	H	H	H	H
280	Cl	H	F	H	H	H
281	Ph	H	H	H	H	H
282	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H
283	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	Br
284	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	Cl
285	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
286	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
287	Cl	H	H	F	H	H

Ex.No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
288	Cl	H	H	CF ₃	H	H
289	Cl	H	H	H	F	H
290	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
291	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
292		H	H	H	H	H
293		H	H	H	H	H
294	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	H
295	Cl	H	H	F	H	Cl
296	Cl	H	F	H	H	Cl
297	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
298	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
299	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
300	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
301	-CF ₃	H	H	H	H	H
302	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
303	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
304	Cl	H	NO ₂	H	H	H
305	CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	H
306	F	H	H	Cl	H	H
307	Cl	H	H	NH ₂	H	H
308	F	CF ₃	H	H	H	H
309	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H	H
310	Cl	H	H	-SCH ₃	H	H
311	F	H	H	H	CF ₃	H
312	F	H	CF ₃	H	H	H
313	CF ₃	H	F	H	H	H
314	NO ₂	H	H	H	H	H
315	F	H	H	H	H	H
316	Cl	H	NH ₂	H	H	H

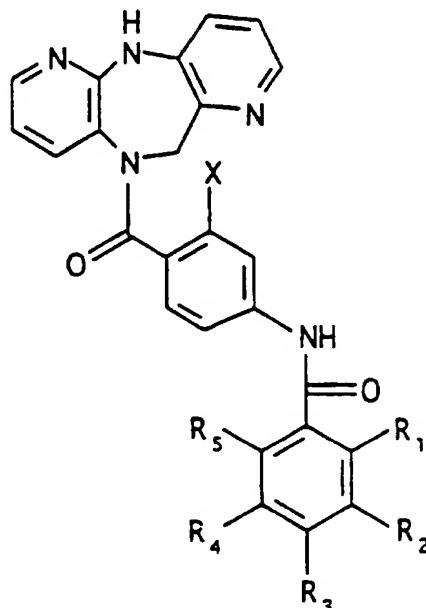
As described for Example 2, the following compounds are prepared (Table H).

5

10

15

20

Table H

25

30

35

Ex. No	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
317	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
318	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	H
319	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	H
320	CH ₂ Ph	H	H	H	H	Cl
321	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
322	F	H	F	H	H	H
323	Br	H	H	H	H	H
324	Cl	H	F	H	H	H
325	Ph	H	H	H	H	H
326	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H
327	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	Br
328	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	Cl
329	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
330	CH ₃	CH ₃	H	H	H	H
331	Cl	H	H	F	H	H

Ex.No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	R ₅	X
5	332	Cl	H	H	CF ₃	H
	333	Cl	H	H	H	F
	334	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
	335	Cl	H	H	F	H
10	336		H	H	H	H
	337		H	H	H	H
15	338	CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃
	339	Cl	H	H	F	H
	340	Cl	H	F	H	H
	341	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
	342	Cl	H	H	Cl	H
20	343	-OCH ₃	H	H	H	H
	344	OCF ₃	H	H	H	H
	345	-CF ₃	H	H	H	H
	346	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H
	347	-SCH ₃	H	H	H	H
25	348	Cl	H	NO ₂	H	H
	349	CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H
	350	F	H	H	Cl	H
	351	Cl	H	H	NH ₂	H
	352	F	CF ₃	H	H	H
30	353	-OCH ₃	H	H	Cl	H
	354	Cl	H	H	-SCH ₃	H
	355	F	H	H	H	CF ₃
	356	F	H	CF ₃	H	H
	357	CF ₃	H	F	H	H
	358	NO ₂	H	H	H	H
35	359	F	H	H	H	H
	360	Cl	H	NH ₂	H	H

Example 361

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl)carbonylphenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

5

As described for Example 5, 2,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2-methyl-6-(4-aminobenzoyl)pyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine is reacted with 2-methylbenzoyl chloride to give the product as crystals (from ethyl acetate), m.p. 257-260°C.

10

Example 362

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1E)-yl)carbonylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl-2-carboxamide

15

As described for Example 2, 6-(4-amino-benzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine (297 mg) is reacted with 0.542 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride to give 0.70 g of bis acylated product. A mixture of this product in 13 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (9:4) and 2.3 ml of 1 N NaOH is stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. To the mixture is added 2.3 ml of 1 N HCl and the solvent removed. The mixture is triturated with 50 ml of CH₂Cl₂, filtered and the solid washed with CH₂Cl₂ and water to give 0.27 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 280-284°C.

20

Example 363

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-6H-isoxazolo[5,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6-yl)carbonylphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

25

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 5,6-dihydro-6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-4H-isoxazolo[5,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 5 mmol of triethylamine is reacted with 2.2 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane under argon for 16 hours to give the product as a solid.

30

The subject compounds of the present invention are tested for biological activity.

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V₁ Receptors

Rat liver plasma membranes expressing the vasopressin V₁ receptor subtypes are isolated by sucrose density gradient according to the method described by
5 Lesko et al., (1973). These membranes are quickly suspended in 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer, pH 7.4, containing 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 0.1 mM phenyl-methylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and kept frozen at -70°C until used in subsequent binding experiments. For
10 binding experiments, the following is added to the wells of a ninety-six well format microtiter plate: 100 µl of 100.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer containing 10.0 mM MgCl₂, 0.2% heat inactivated BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %, 1,10-phenanthrcline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 µl of [phenylalanyl-3,4,5-³H] vasopressin (S.A. 45.1 Ci/mmol) at 0.8 nM, and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80 µl of tissue membranes containing 20 µg of tissue protein. The
15 plates are kept undisturbed on the bench top at room temperature for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific samples are assayed in the presence of 0.1 µM of the unlabeled antagonist phenylalanylvasopressin, added in 20.0 µl volume to a final incubation volume of 200 µl. Upon completion of binding, the content of each
20 well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The
25 data are analyzed for IC₅₀ values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

Binding Assay to Rat Kidney Medullary V₂ Receptors

30 Medullary tissues from rat kidneys are dissected out, cut into small pieces and let soak in a 0.154 mM sodium chloride solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA with many changes of the liquid phase, until the
35

solution is clear of blood. The tissue is homogenized
in a 0.25 M sucrose solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA and
5 0.1 mM PMSF using a Potter-Elvehjem homogenizer with a
teflon pestle. The homogenate is filtered through
several layers (4 layers) of cheese cloth. The filtrate
is rehomogenized using a dounce homogenizer, with a
tight fitting pestle. The final homogenate is
10 centrifuged at 1500 x g for 15 min. The nuclear pellet
is discarded and the supernatant fluid recentrifuged at
40,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet formed
contains a dark inner part with the exterior, slightly
pink. The pink outer part is suspended in a small
15 amount of 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein
content is determined by the Lowry's method (Lowry et
al, J. Biol. Chem., 1953). The membrane suspension is
stored at -70°C, in 50.0 mM Tris-HCl, containing 0.2%
20 inactivated BSA and 0.1 mM PMSF in aliquots of 1.0 ml
containing 10.0 mg protein per ml of suspension until
use in subsequent binding experiments.

For binding experiments, the following is
added in μ l volume to wells of a 96 well format of a
microtiter plate: 100.0 μ l of 100.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer
25 containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl₂ and
a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %;
aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthrcline, 2.0 mg %;
tryptsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 μ l of
30 [³H] Arginine⁸, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmmole) at 0.8
nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0 μ l
of tissue membranes (200.0 μ g tissue protein). The
plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120
35 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is
assessed in the presence of 1.0 μ M of unlabeled ligand,
added in 20 μ l volume. For test compounds, these are
solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in
20.0 μ l volume to a final incubation volume of 200 μ l.
Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is

5 filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC₅₀ values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

10 Radioligand Binding Experiments with Human Platelet Membranes

Platelet Source: Hudson Valley Blood Services, Westchester Medical Center, Valhalla, NY.

15 Platelet Membrane Preparation:

20 Frozen platelet rich plasma (PRP), received from the Hudson Valley Blood Services are thawed to room temperature. The tubes containing the PRP are centrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 min. at 4°C and the supernatant fluid discarded. The platelets resuspended in an equal volume of 50.0 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5 containing 120 mM NaCl and 20.0 mM EDTA. The suspension is recentrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 min. This washing step is repeated one more time. The wash is discarded and the lysed pellets homogenized in low ionic strength buffer of Tris-HCl, 5.0 mM, pH 7.5 containing 5.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 min. The resulting pellet is resuspended in Tris-HCl buffer, 70.0 mM, pH 7.5 and recentrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 min. The final pellet is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer pH 7.4 containing 120 mM NaCl and 5.0 mM HCl to give 1.0-2.0 mg protein per ml of suspension.

30 Binding to Vasopressin V₁ Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet Membranes:

35 In wells of a 96 well format microtiter plate, add 100 µl of 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer containing 0.2% BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors (aprotinin,

leupeptin etc.). Then add 20 μ l of [3 H]Ligand: (Manning or Arg⁸Vasopressin), to give final concentrations ranging from 0.01 to 10.0 nM. Initiate the binding by adding 80.0 μ l of platelet suspension (approx. 100 μ g protein). Mix all reagents by pipetting the mixture up and down a few times. Non-specific binding is measured in the presence of 1.0 μ M of unlabeled ligand (Manning or Arg⁸Vasopressin). Let the mixture stand undisturbed at room temperature for ninety (90) min. Upon this time, rapidly filter off the incubate under vacuum suction over GF/B filters, using a Brandel® Harvester. Determine the radioactivity caught on the filter disks by the addition of liquid scintillant and counting in a liquid scintillator

Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (IV-2) transfected with the cDNA expressing the Human V₂ Vasopressin Receptor

Membrane Preparation

Flasks of 175 ml capacity, containing attached cells grown to confluence are cleared of culture medium by aspiration. The flasks containing the attached cells are rinsed with 2 x 5 ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and the liquid aspirated off each time. Finally, 5 ml of an enzyme free dissociation Hank's based solution (Specialty Media, Inc., Lafayette, NJ) is added and the flasks are left undisturbed for 2 min. The content of all flasks is poured into a centrifuge tube and the cells pelleted at 300 x g for 15 min. The Hank's based solution is aspirated off and the cells homogenized with a polytron at setting #6 for 10 sec in 10.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer, pH 7.4 containing 0.25 M sucrose and 1.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 1500 x g for 10 min to remove ghost membranes. The supernatant fluid is centrifuged at 100,000 x g for 60

min to pellet the receptor protein.. Upon completion, the pellet is resuspended in a small volume of 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry method and the receptor membranes are suspended in 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer containing 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to give 2.5 mg receptor protein per ml of suspension.

Receptor Binding

For binding experiments, the following is added in μ l volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0 μ l of 100.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl₂ and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 μ l of [³H] Arginine⁸, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmol) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0 μ l of tissue membranes (200.0 μ g tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0 μ M of unlabeled ligand, added in 20 μ l volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 μ l volume to a final incubation volume of 200 μ l. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC₅₀ values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

Vasopressin V₂ Antagonist Activity in Conscious Hydrated Rats

Conscious hydrated rats are treated with compounds under study from 0.1 to 100 mg/kg orally or vehicle. Two to four rats are used for each compound. One hour later, arginine vasopressin (AVP, antidiuretic hormone, ADH) dissolved in peanut oil is administered at 0.4 µg/kg intraperitoneally. Two rats in each test would not receive arginine vasopressin but only the vehicle (peanut oil) to serve as water-loading control. Twenty minutes later each rat is given 30 mL/kg of deionized water orally by gavage and is placed individually in a metabolic cage equipped with a funnel and a graduated glass cylinder to collect urine for four hours. Urine volume is measured and osmolality analyzed by use of a Fiske One-Ten osmometer (Fiske Assoc., Norwood, MA USA). Urinary sodium, potassium, and chloride are analyzed by use of ion-specific electrodes in a Beckman E3 (Electrolyte 3) Analyzer.

In the following results, decreased urine volume and decreased osmolality relative to AVP-control indicates activity. The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Table 2.

Vasopressin V₁ Antagonist Activity in Conscious Rats

Conscious rats are restrained in a supine position with elastic tape. The area at the base of the tail is locally anesthetized by subcutaneous infiltration with 2% procaine (0.2 ml). Using aseptic technique the ventral caudal tail artery is isolated and a cannula made of PE 10 and 20 (heat-fused) tubing is passed into the lower abdominal aorta. The cannula is secured, heparinized (1000 i.u./cc), sealed and the would closed with one or two stitches of Dexon 4-0. The caudal vein is also cannulated in the same manner for intravenous

drug administration. The duration of the surgery is approximately 5 minutes. Additional local anesthesia (2% procaine or lidocaine) is provided as needed.

5 The animals are placed in plastic restraining cages in an upright position. The cannula is attached to a Statham P23Db pressure transducer and pulsatile blood pressure is recorded. Increase of systolic blood pressure responses to arginine vasopressin 0.01 and 0.2 10 international unit (I.U.) (350 I.U.=1 mg) injections are recorded prior to any drug (compound) administration, after which each rat is dosed orally with compounds under study 0.1-100 mg/kg (10 cc/kg) or intravenously 15 0.1-30 mg/kg (1 cc/kg). The vasopressin injections are repeated 30, 60, 90, 120, 180, 240 and 300 min. later. Percentage of antagonism by the compound is calculated using the pre-drug vasopressin vasopressor response as 100%.

20

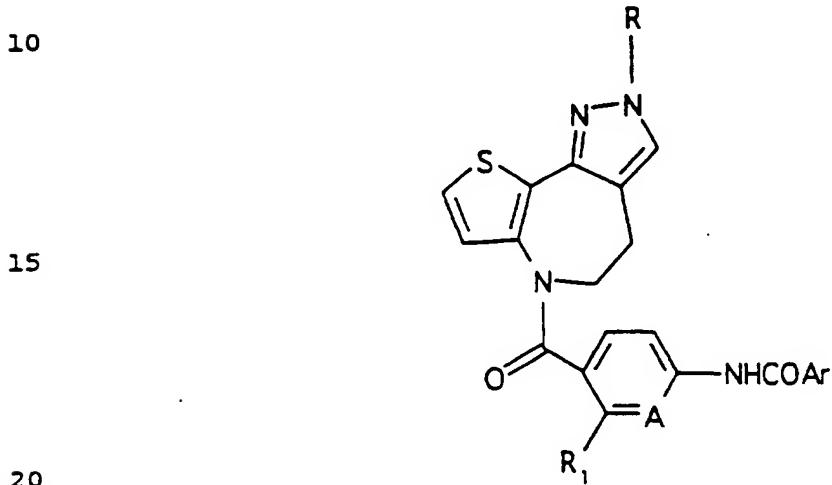
25

30

35

Table 1

5 Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V₁ Receptors and Rat Kidney
Medullary V₂ Receptors or *Binding to V₁ Receptor
Subtype in Human Platelet and **Binding to Membranes of
Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the
cDNA Expressing the Human V₂ Receptor



Ex. No.	R	R1	Ar	A	V1	IC50 (μ M)
						V2
5 361	CH ₃	H		CH	2.01 *1.74	0.024 **0.22
10 5	CH ₃	H		CH	2.1 *4.1	0.038 **0.15
15 6	CH ₃	H		CH	4.7	0.23
20 7	H	H		CH	2.1 *0.24	0.12 **0.13
25 1	H	H		CH	2.0	0.34
30 2	H	H		CH	1.7	0.069 **0.071
35 3	H	Cl		CH	24% at 1 μ M	0.0061
35 4	H	Cl		CH	8% at 1 μ M	0.036

Table 2

Vasopressin V₂ Antagonist Activity In Conscious Hydrated
Rats

5

10

15

Ex. No.	Dose (mg/kg)	N	Urine Vol. (ml/4hrs.)	Osmolality (mOsm/kg)
*		78	13.3±0.3	229±6
**		6	12.1±1	497±53
		4	12.4±0.8	361±30
***		76	2±0.2	1226±58
1	10	2	15.3	535
2	10	2	17.8	429
7	10	2	20.8	322

* Water-load control

** Water-load

Control+DMSO (10%)

20

(20%)

*** AVP-control

Oxytocin Receptor Binding(a) Membrane Preparation

25

Female Sprague-Dawley rats weighing approximately 200-250 g are injected intramuscularly (i.m.) with 0.3 mg/kg of body weight of diethyl-stilbestrol (DES). The rats are sacrificed 18 hours later under pentobarbital anesthesia. The uteri are dissected out, cleaned of fat and connective tissues and rinsed in 50 ml of normal saline. The tissue pooled from six rats is homogenized in 50 ml of 0.01 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.5 mM dithiothreitol and 1.0 mM EDTA, adjusted to pH 7.4, using a polytron at setting 6 with three passes of 10 sec each. The homogenate is passed through two (2) layers of cheesecloth and the filtrate centrifuged at 1000 x g for 10 min. The clear

30

35

5 supernatant is removed and re-centrifuged at 165,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet containing the oxytocin receptors is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl containing 5.0 mM MgCl₂ at pH 7.4, to give a protein concentration of 2.5 mg/ml of tissue suspension. This preparation is used in subsequent binding assays with [³H]Oxytocin.

10 (b) Radilgand Binding

15 Binding of 3,5-[³H]Oxytocin ([³H]OT) to its receptors is done in microtiter plates using [³H]OT, at various concentrations, in an assay buffer of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, pH 7.4 and containing 5.0 mM MgCl₂, and a mixture of protease inhibitors: BSA, 0.1 mg; aprotinin, 1.0 mg; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg; trypsin, 10.0 mg; and PMSF, 0.3 mg per 100 ml of buffer solution. Non-specific binding is determined in the presence of 1.0 uM unlabeled OT. The binding reaction is terminated after 60 min., at 22°C, by rapid filtration through glass fiber filters using a Brandel® cell harvester (Biomedical Research and Development Laboratories, Inc., Gaithersburg, MD). Competition experiments are conducted at equilibrium using 1.0 nM [³H]OT and varying the concentration of the displacing agents. The concentrations of agent displacing 50% of [³H]OT at its sites (IC₅₀) are calculated by a computer assisted LUNDON-2 program (LUNDON SOFTWARE INC., Ohio, USA).

20 The results of this assay on representative examples are shown in Table 3.

25

30

35

Table 3
Oxvtocin Binding Assay

Ex. No.	Dose (μM)	% Inhibition at 10 μM	IC50 (μM)
361	10	57	6.4
5	10	47	
6	10	94	1.7
7	10	65	
1	10	93	2.5
2	10	91	1.3
3	1	21	
4	1	0	

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from pharmaceutically or physiologically acceptable acids or bases. These salts include, but are not limited to, the following: salts with inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and, as the case may be, such organic acids as acetic acid, oxalic acid, succinic acid, and maleic acid. Other salts include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases. The compounds can also be used in the form of esters, carbamates and other conventional "pro-drug" forms, which, when administered in such form, convert to the active moiety in vivo.

When the compounds are employed for the above utilities, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible powders, granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar,

5 and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solutions or suspensions containing from about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 25 to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

10 The effective dosage of active ingredient employed may vary depending on the particular compound employed, the mode of administration and the severity of the condition being treated. However, in general, satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.5 to about 500 mg/kg of animal body weight, preferably given in divided doses two to four times a day, or in a sustained release form. For most large mammals the total daily dosage is from about 1 to 100 mg, preferably from about 2 to 80 mg. Dosage forms suitable for internal use comprise from about 0.5 to 500 mg of the active compound in intimate admixture with a solid or liquid pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses may be administered daily or the dose may be proportionally reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation.

15 20 25 30 35 These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfactants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration de-

5

sired. Adjuvants customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

10

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

15

These active compounds may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydroxypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in glycerol, liquid, polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage and use, these preparations contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

20

The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exists. It must be stable under conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacterial and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oil.

25

30
35

The new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of this invention are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are

5

desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

10

In particular, the vasopressin antagonists of this invention are therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombocytopenia-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

15

In particular, the oxytocin antagonists of this invention are useful in the prevention of preterm labor and premature birth which is a significant cause of infant health problems and infant mortality.

20

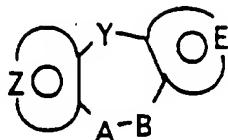
25

30

35

What is claimed is:

5 1. A compound selected from those of the formula:

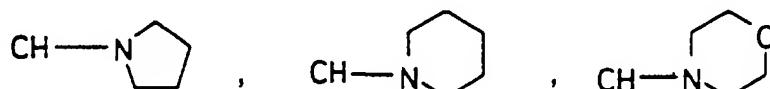


10

I

wherein Y is a bond or a moiety selected from $-(CH_2)-$,
 $-CHOH$, $-CHO$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), $-CH-S$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), $-CHNH_2$, $-CHN$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), $-C[N]$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆)₂.

15



20

$-CHOCO$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), $-CHNH(CH_2)_mNH_2$; $-CHNH(CH_2)_m-N$ [lower alkyl(C₁-C₆)]₂; $-CHNH(CH_2)_m-S$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), $-CHNH(CH_2)_m-O$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₆),

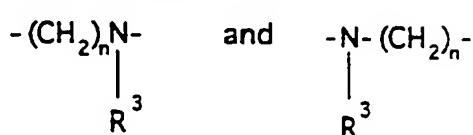
25



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

A-B is a moiety selected from

30



35

wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 provided that when Y is a bond, n is 2;
 and the moiety:

5



10

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, or S; and the moiety:

15

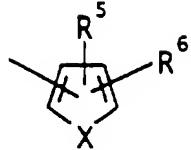
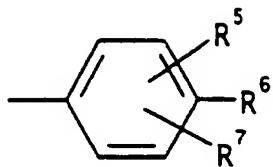


20

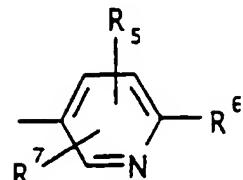
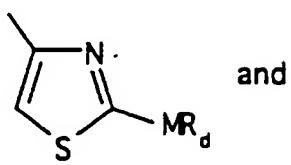
represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;
R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

35

5



10



15

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

20

R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

25

30

35

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{R}_a & \text{R}_a & \text{R}_a & \text{R}_a \text{ R}_b \\ | & | & | & | \\ -\text{NCOAr}', & -\text{CONAr}', & -\text{NCOCH}_2\text{Ar}', & -\text{NCONAr}', \end{array}$$

$$-\text{CH}_2\text{COAr}', \quad -\text{NCO}- (\text{CH}_2)_n - \text{cyclic alkyl},$$

10

15

20

R_aO
||
-N-C-O-lower alkyl ($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) straight or branched,
 R_bO

25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ R_a \end{array} \begin{array}{c} O \\ || \\ a \end{array}$
 -N-C-lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,
 -NSO₂-lower alkyl (C_2 - C_6) straight or branched.

$-N-C(=O)-O-$ lower alk enyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,

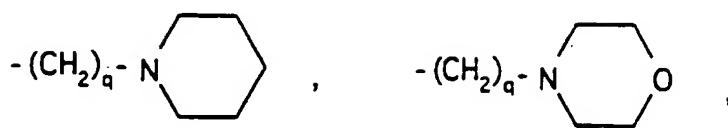
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{R}_a \\
 | \\
 \text{R}_a - \text{N} - \text{C} = \text{O} \\
 || \\
 -\text{NSO}_2-\text{lower alkanyl (C}_3\text{--C}_8\text{) straight or branched,} \\
 -\text{NSO}_2-\text{lower alkanyl (C}_3\text{--C}_8\text{) straight or branched,}
 \end{array}$$

35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆)₁₋₂ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

5



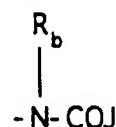
10



15

$-(CH_2)_q-O$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

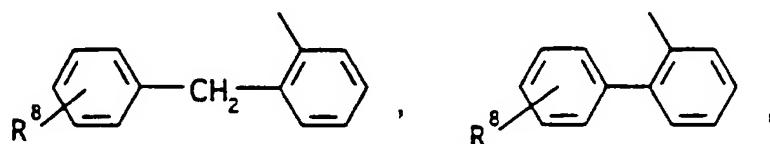
(b) a moiety of the formula:



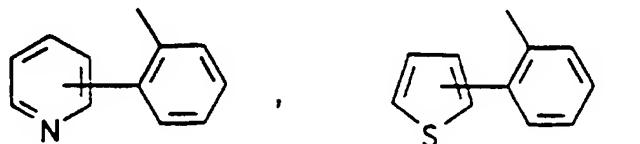
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

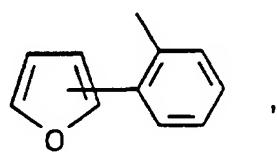
25



30

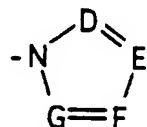


35



or $-\text{CH}_2-\text{K}'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

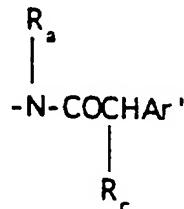


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO , (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

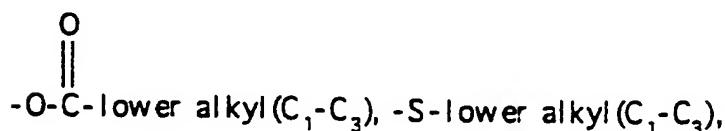
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

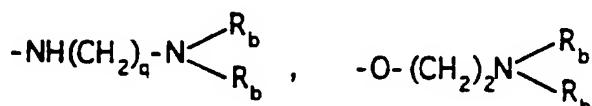
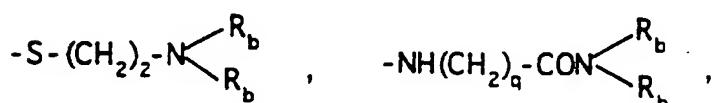


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

25



30



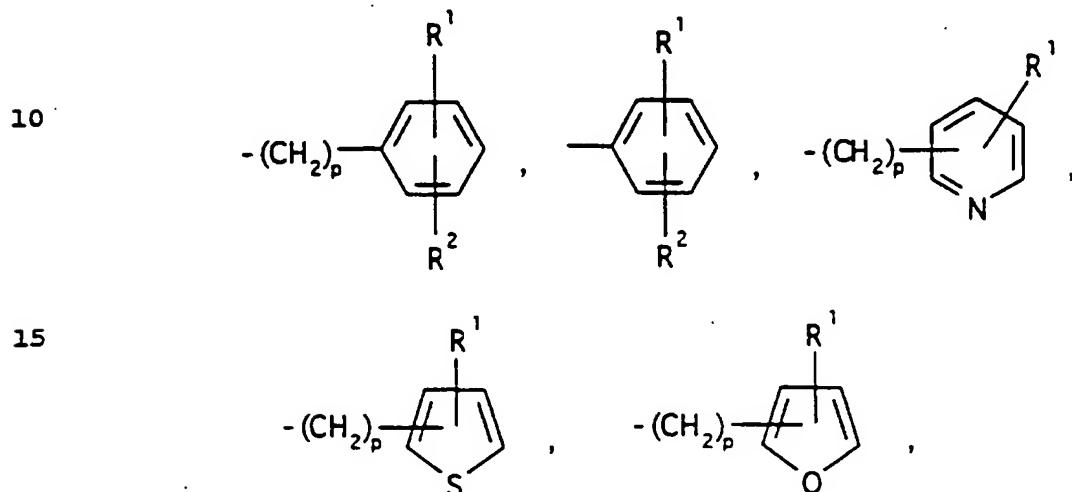
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

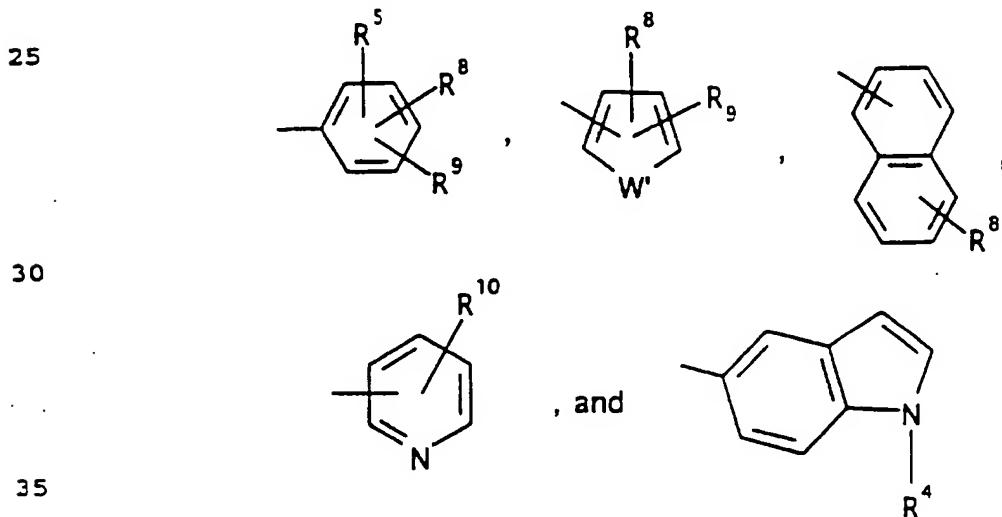
(d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-R_d

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the moieties:



20 wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined; wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



5 wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and;

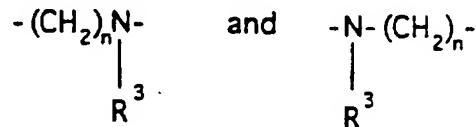
10 R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂, and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15 2. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is -CH₂-; A-B is a moiety:



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 and R³ is as defined in Claim 1.

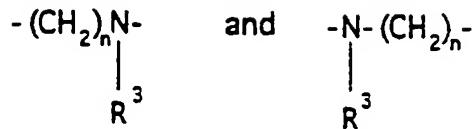
25 3. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is a bond, A-B is a moiety:



30 wherein n is an integer 2 and R³ is as defined in Claim 1.

35 4. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), A-B is a moiety:

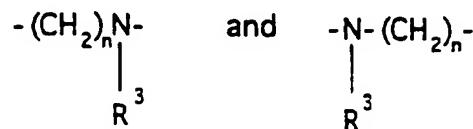
5



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 and R³ is as defined in Claim 1.

10

5. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is -CH₂-; A-B is a moiety:

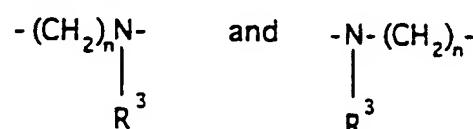


15

wherein n is an integer 1 and R³ is as defined in Claim 1.

6. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₆) and A-B is a moiety:

20

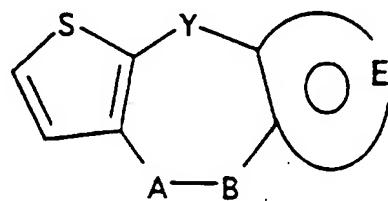


25

wherein n is an integer 1 and R³ is as defined in Claim 1.

7. A compound selected from those of the formula:

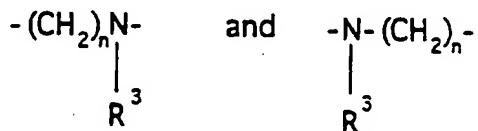
30



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is

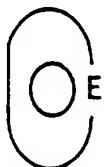
35

5



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:

10



represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

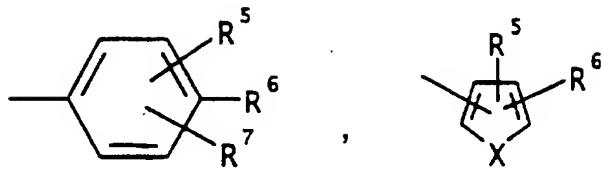
20

25

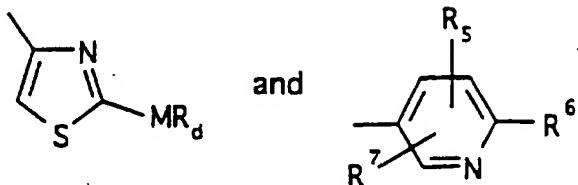
30

35

5



10



15

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

20

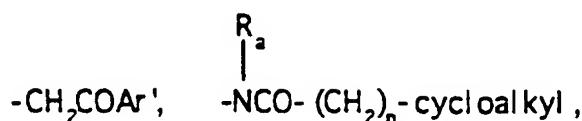
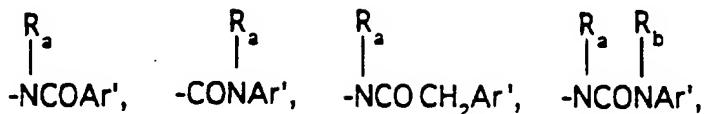
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

25

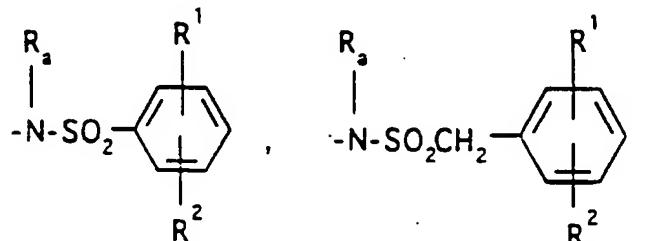
30

35

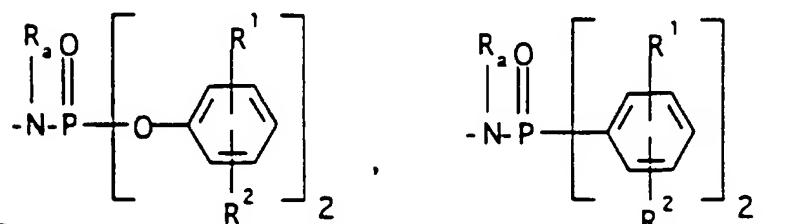
5



10



15



20

$-N-C-O\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched,}$

25

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-[O\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched,} \end{array}$

30

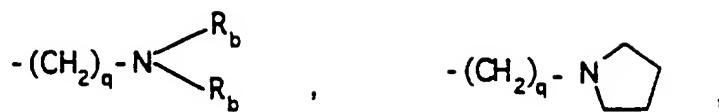
$-N-C-O\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched,}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-[O\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched,} \end{array}$

35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



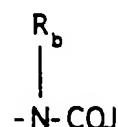
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_1\text{-C}_3\text{)}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$.

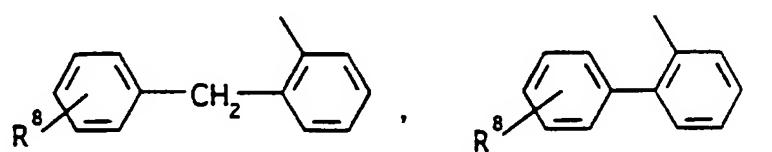
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a , lower alkyl($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) branched or unbranched, $\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)}$ branched or unbranched, $-\text{O-lower alkenyl(C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)}$ branched or unbranched, tetrahydrcfuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

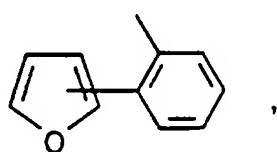
25



30

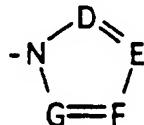


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

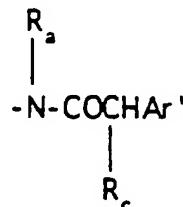
5



10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO-}$ lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

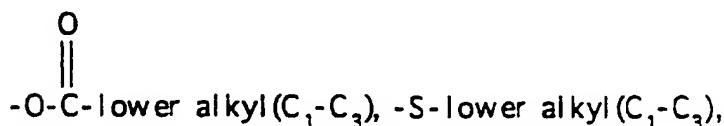
(c) a moiety of the formula:



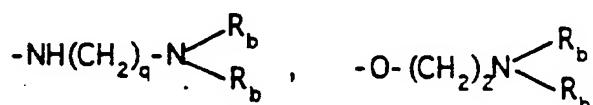
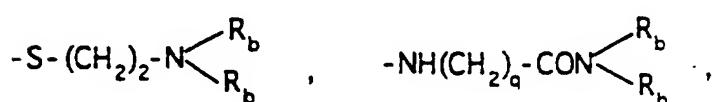
10

wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, $-\text{O-}$ lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

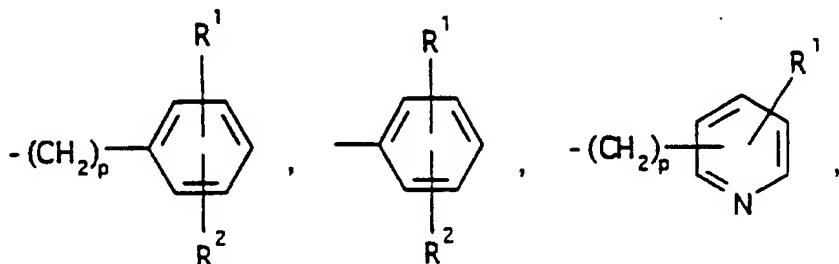
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

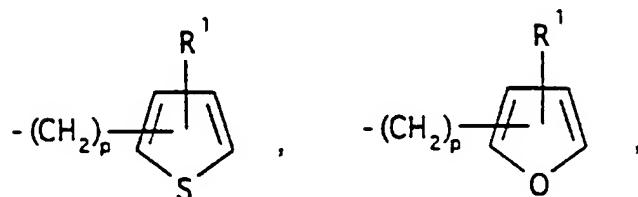
-M-Rd

5 wherein Rd is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NHCH₃ and the moiety -M-Rd wherein Rd is selected from the moieties:

10



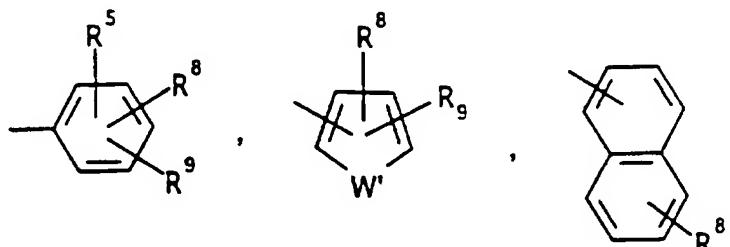
15



20

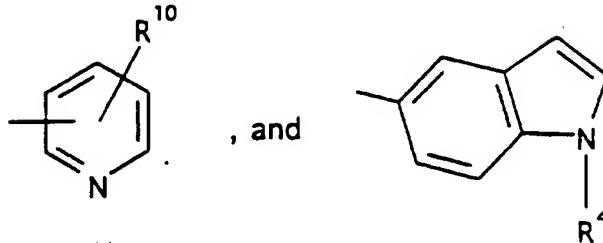
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R³ are as hereinbefore defined; wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



30

35



5

10

15

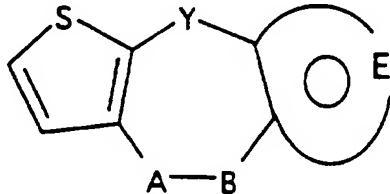
20

25

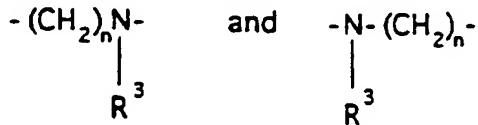
30

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

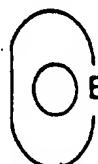
8. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



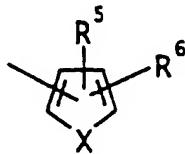
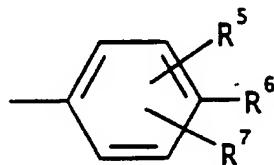
35

represents: an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents

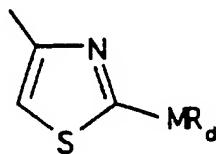
selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino;

5 R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

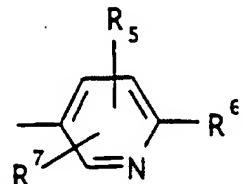
10



15



and



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

25

30

35

$$R_a \quad R_a \quad R_a \quad R_a \quad R_b$$

$-NCOAr'$, $-CONAr'$, $-NCOCH_2Ar'$, $-NCONAr'$,

$$-\text{CH}_2\text{COAr}', \quad -\text{NCO}- (\text{CH}_2)_n - \text{cycl oal kyl} ,$$

10

10
11

20

$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_a\text{O} \\ | \\ -\text{N}-\text{P} \end{array}$ $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{R}' \\ | \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{R}' \\ | \\ \text{R}^2 \end{array} \right]_n$, $\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_a\text{O} \\ | \\ -\text{N}-\text{P} \end{array}$ $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{R}' \\ | \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{R}' \\ | \\ \text{R}^2 \end{array} \right]_m$

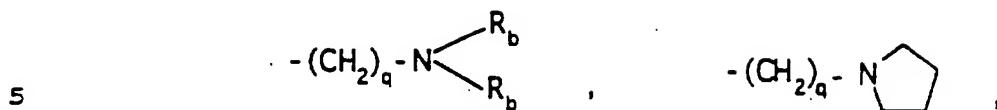
$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_a\text{O} \\ | \\ -\text{N}-\text{C}-\text{O}-\text{lower alkyl}(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_8)\text{straight or branched.} \\ | \\ \text{R}_a \end{array}$

25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ R_a \end{array} \begin{array}{c} O \\ || \\ -N-C- \end{array}$ lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,
 $-NSO_2-$ lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

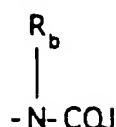
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{R}_a \quad \text{O} \\
 | \qquad || \\
 \text{R}_a - \text{N}-\text{C}-\text{lower alkenyl} (\text{C}_3-\text{C}_8) \text{ straight or branched}, \\
 -\text{NSO}_2-\text{lower alkenyl} (\text{C}_3-\text{C}_8) \text{ straight or branched},
 \end{array}$$

35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

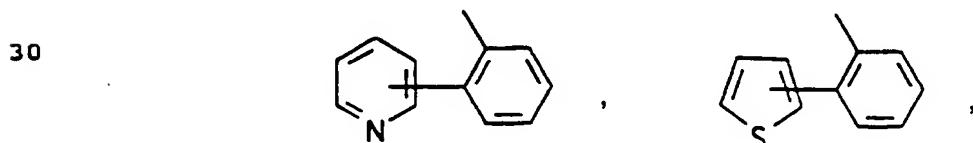
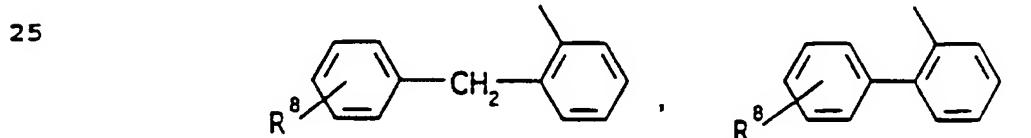


- $(CH_2)_q-O$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

(b) a moiety of the formula:

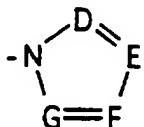


20 wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrcfuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

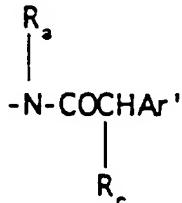


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

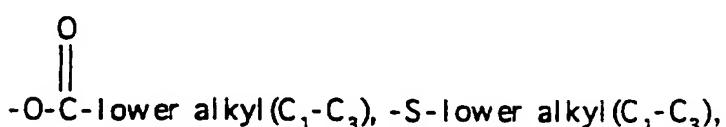
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

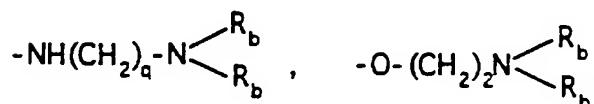
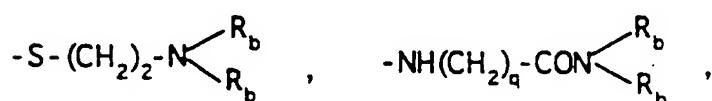


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

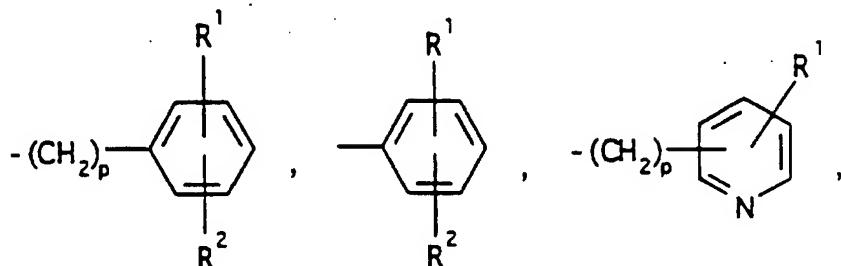
(d) a moiety of the formula:



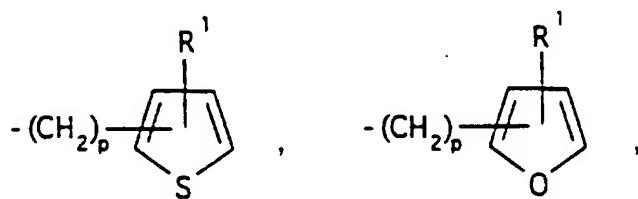
5

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the moieties:

10



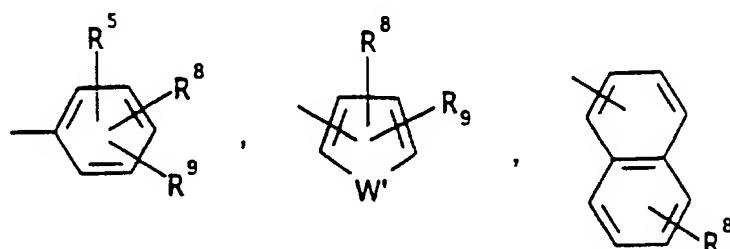
15



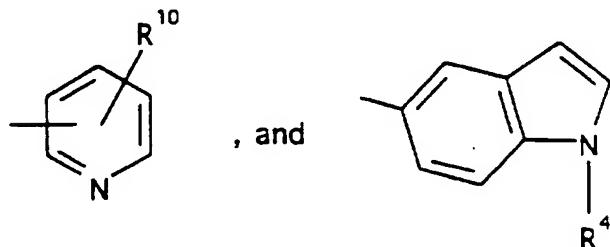
20

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_d are as hereinbefore defined; wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



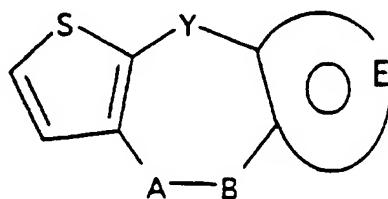
30



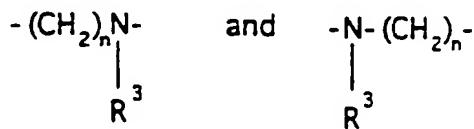
35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

9. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:

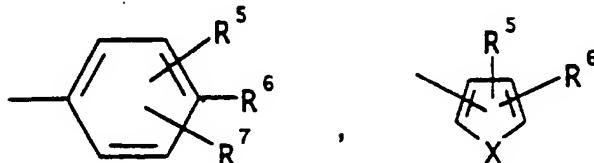


represents: a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; wherein the 5-membered heterocyclic ring is

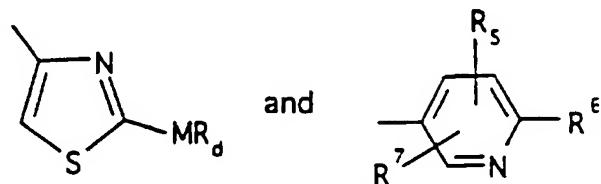
optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen,
or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

5 R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the
group consisting of:

10



15



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃;
R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-
lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

20

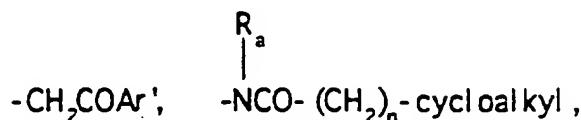
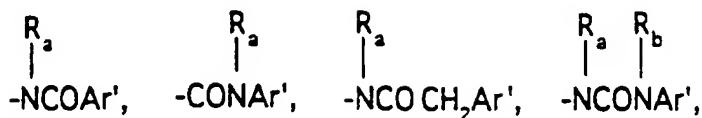
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower
alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected
from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy
and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the
formulae:

25

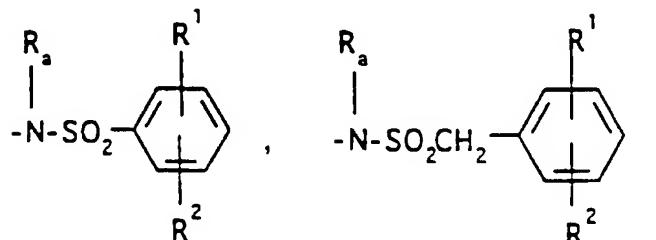
30

35

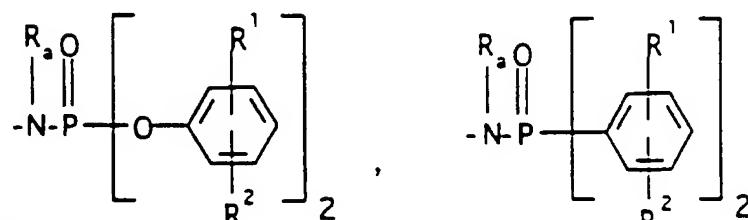
5



10



15



20

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched} \end{array}$

25

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

30

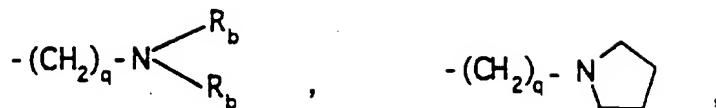
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



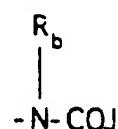
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

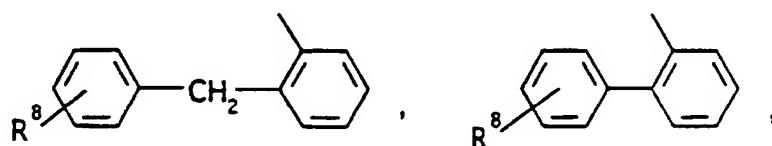
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

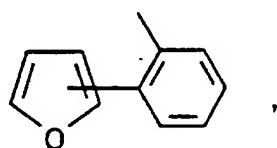
25



30

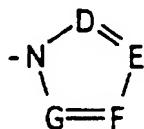


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

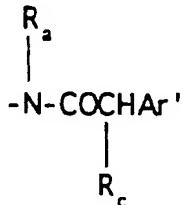
5



10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$) lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

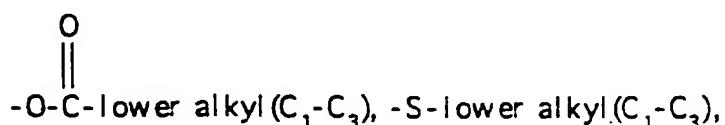


20

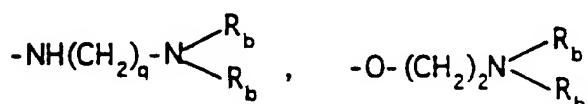
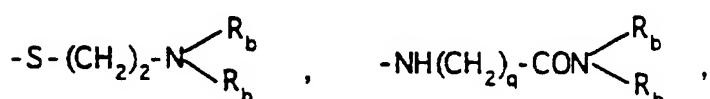
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)

lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



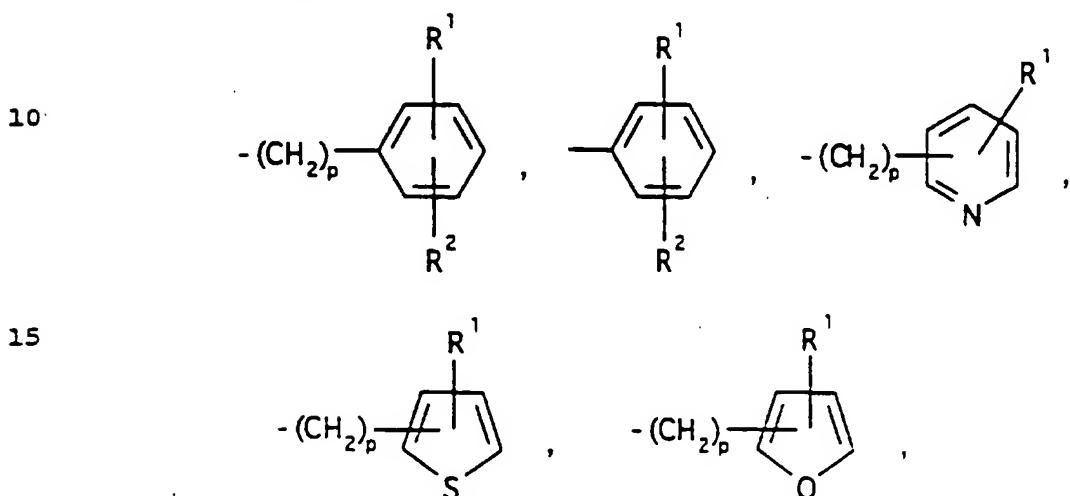
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

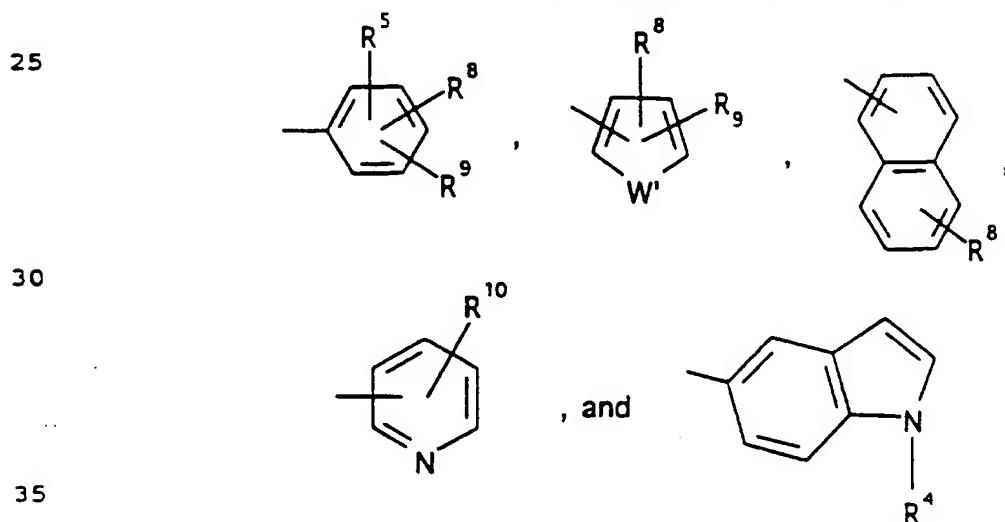
(d) a moiety of the formula:

^{-M-Rd}

wherein Rd is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and
 the moiety -M-Rd wherein Rd is selected from the
 moieties:

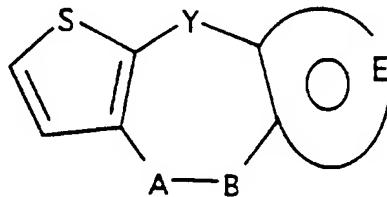


20 wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_d are as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

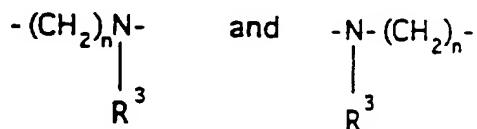
10. A compound selected from those of the formula:



20

wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is

25



30

wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



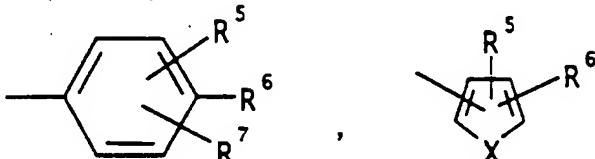
35

represents: a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; wherein the 5-membered heterocyclic ring is optionally

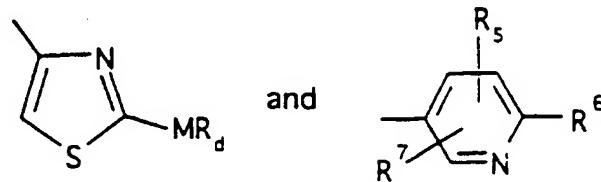
substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

5 R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

10



15



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃).

20

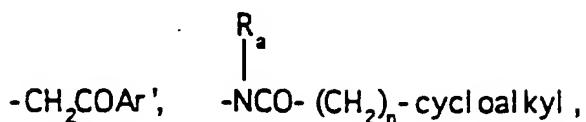
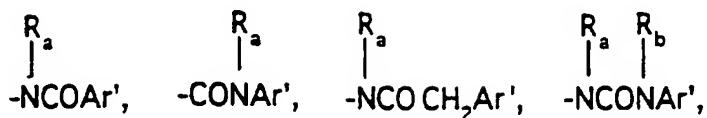
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

25

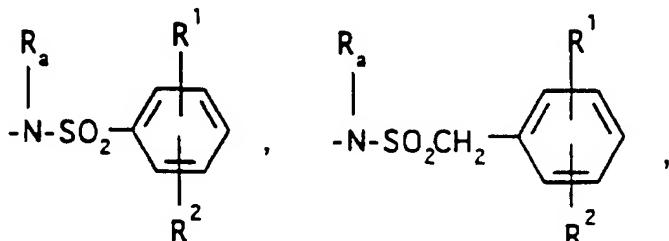
30

35

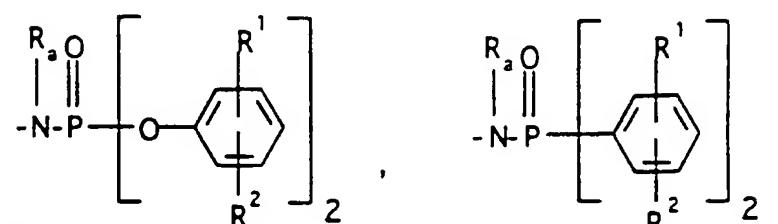
5



10



15



20

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

25

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

30

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$



$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

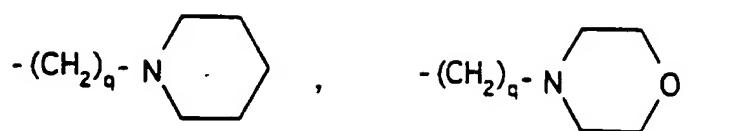
35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



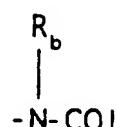
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_1\text{-C}_3\text{)}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$.

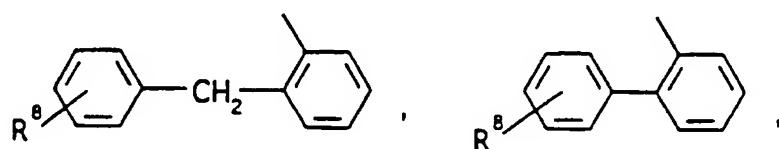
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a , lower alkyl($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) branched or unbranched, $-\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)}$ branched or unbranched, $-\text{O-lower alkenyl(C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)}$ branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

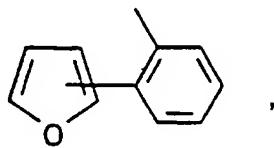
25



30

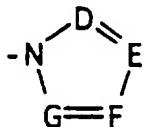


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

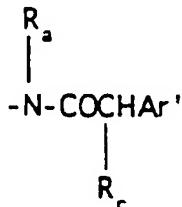


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$), CHO , ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

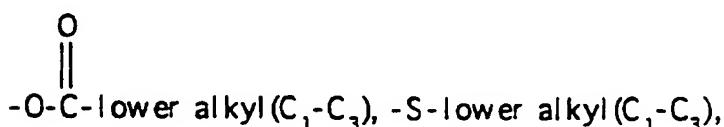
20



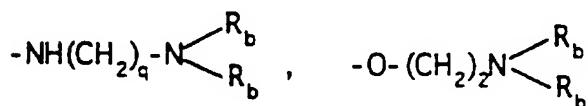
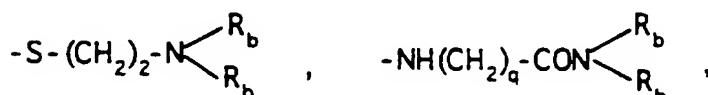
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)

lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

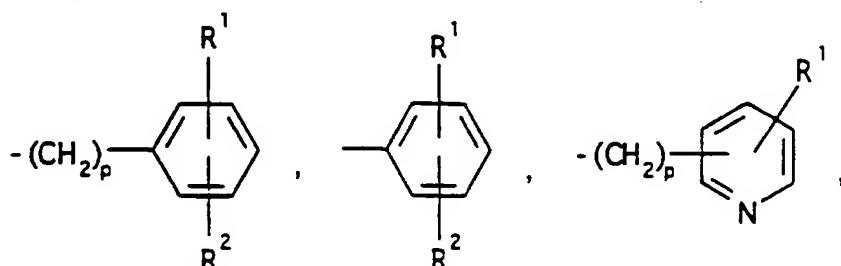
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

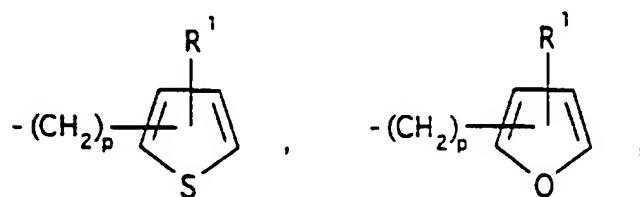
-M-R_d

5 wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the moieties:

10



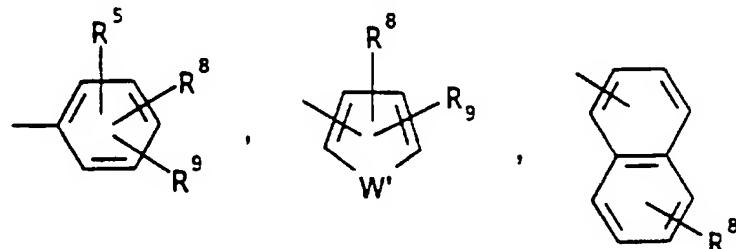
15



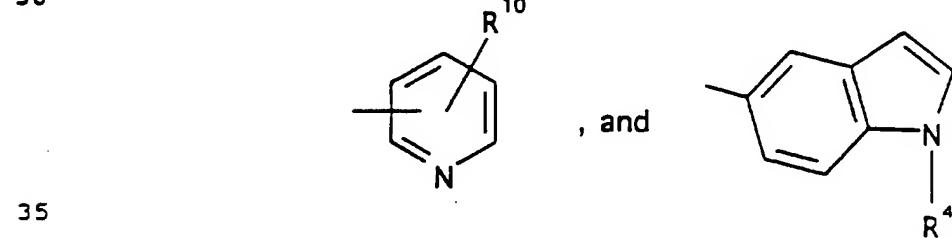
20

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_d are as hereinbefore defined; wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



30

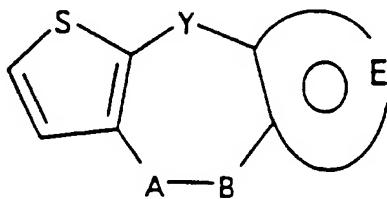


35

-179-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)₅-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

11. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-E is

$$-\text{CH}_2\text{N}- \quad \text{and} \quad -\text{N}-\text{CH}_2-$$

$\begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{R}^3 \end{array}$

wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



represents: a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5-

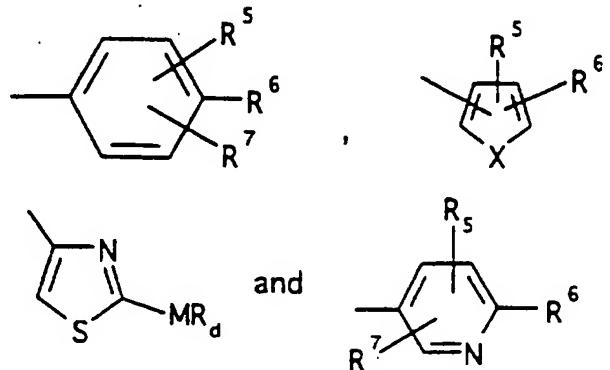
5

membered heterocyclic ring is optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

10

R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

15



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

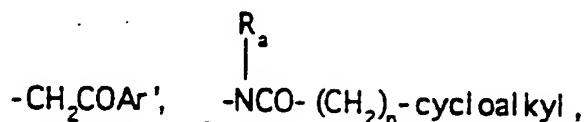
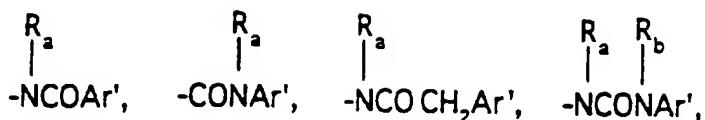
25

R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

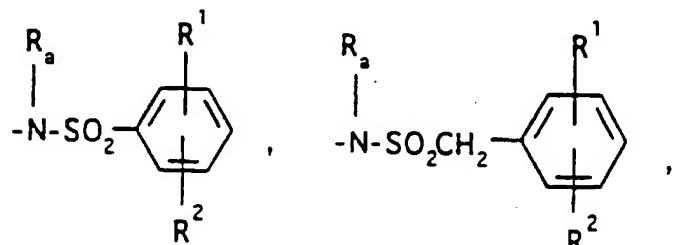
30

35

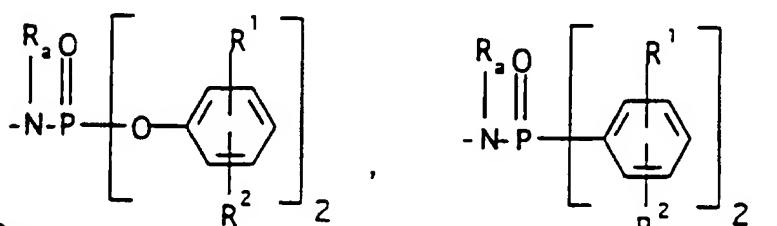
5



10



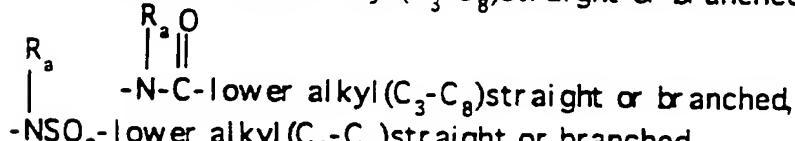
15



20

$-N-C-O\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched},$

25



$-N-C\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched},$

30

$-N-C-O\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched},$



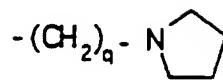
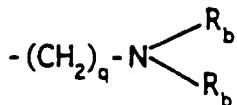
$-N-C\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched},$

$-NSO_2\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{) straight or branched},$

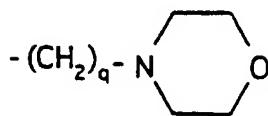
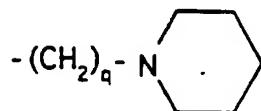
35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



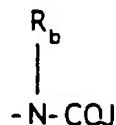
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_1\text{-C}_3\text{)}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

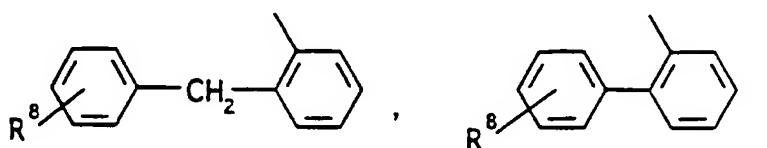
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

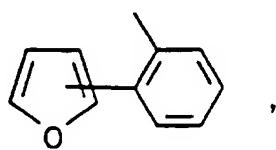
25



30

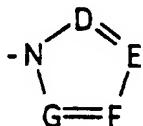


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

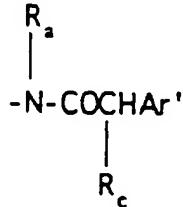


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

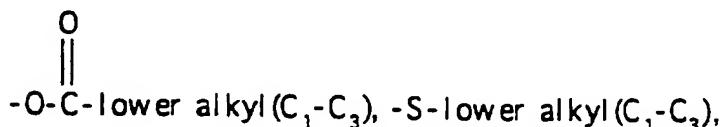
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

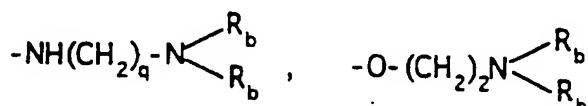
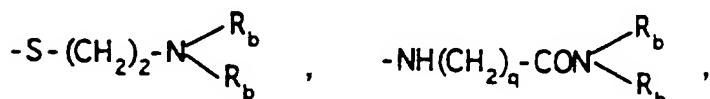


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

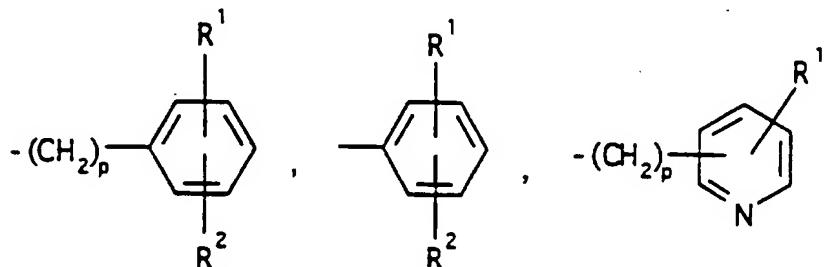
(d) a moiety of the formula:



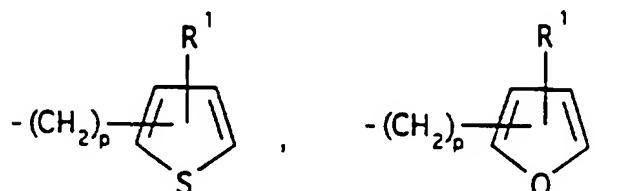
5

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the moieties:

10



15

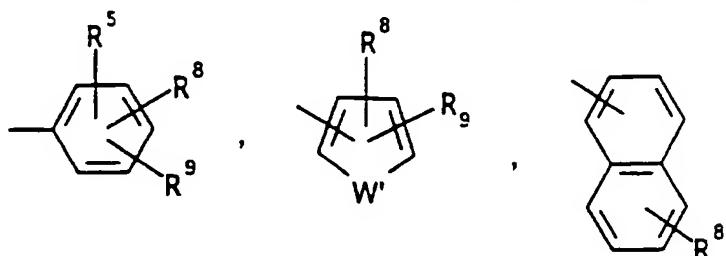


20

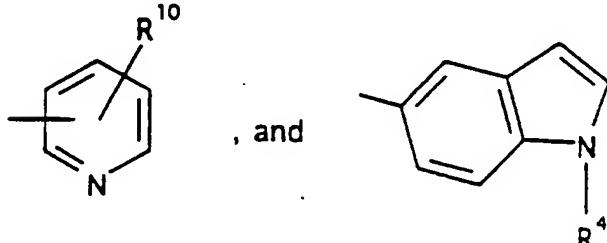
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



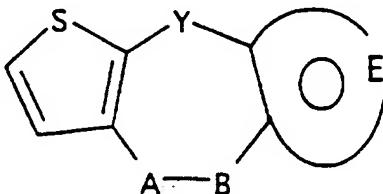
30



35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

12. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



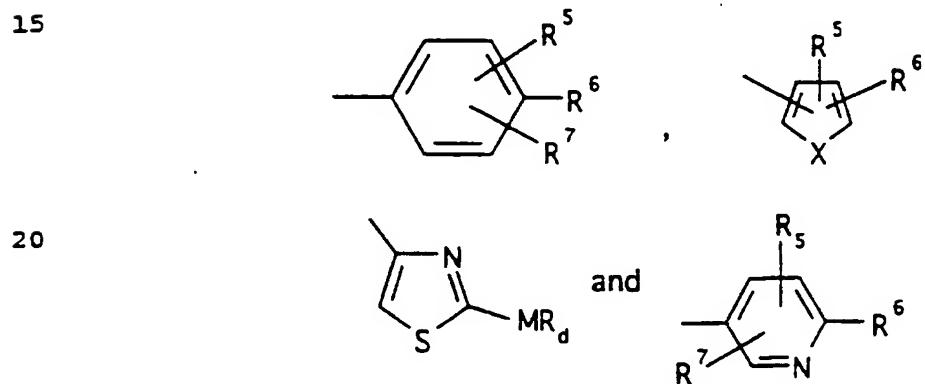
represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-

5

C_3) lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3) lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; 10 wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, halogen, or (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy;

15

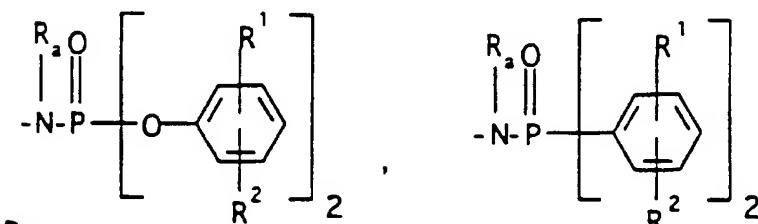
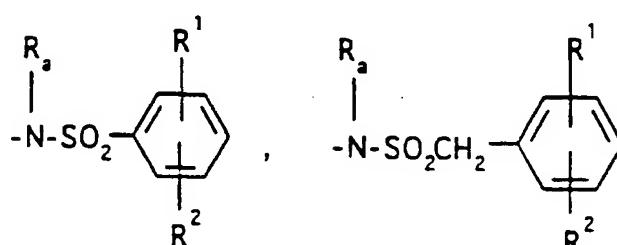
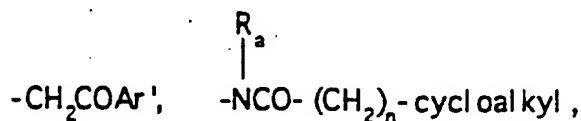
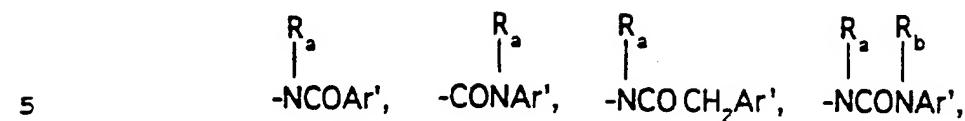
R^3 is $-COAr$, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; 25 R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-CO-$ lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), R^1 and R^2 are selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen; R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

30



25 $-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \text{ O} \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl} (C_3-C_8) \text{ straight or branched,} \\ R_a \text{ O} \\ || \end{array}$

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,



30 $-N-C-O$ -lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

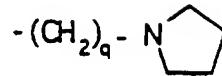
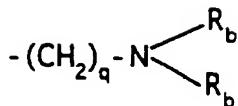


30 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

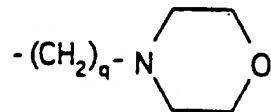
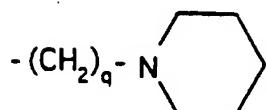
35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C_3-C_6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$.

5



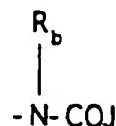
10



$-(\text{CH}_2)_q$ -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

15

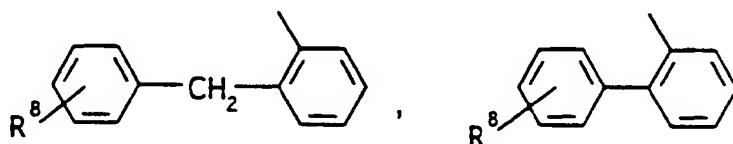
(b) a moiety of the formula:



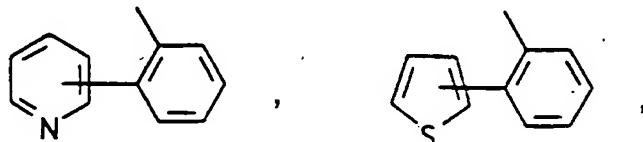
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

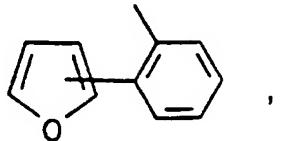
25



30

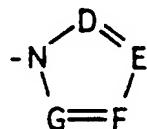


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

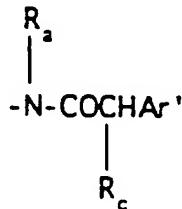


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, $-\text{CC}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

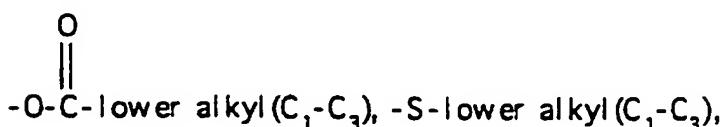
20



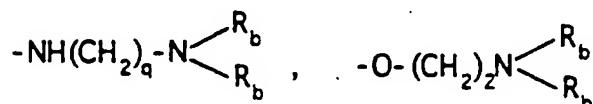
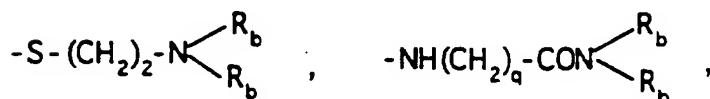
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$)

lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

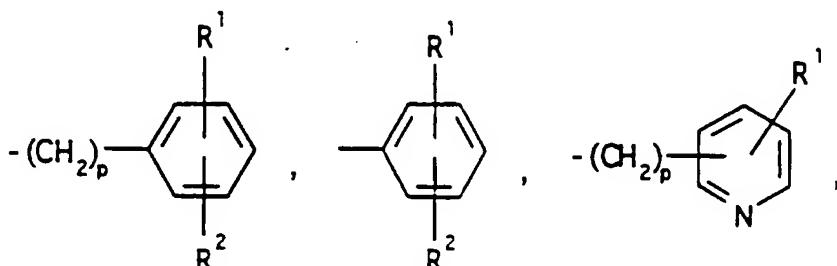
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

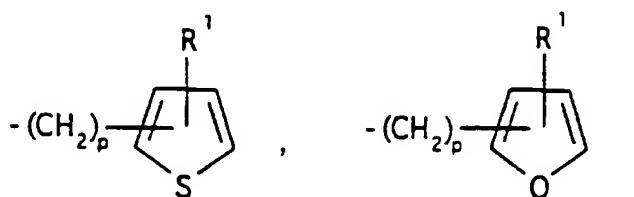
-M-R_d

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and
 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
 moieties:

10



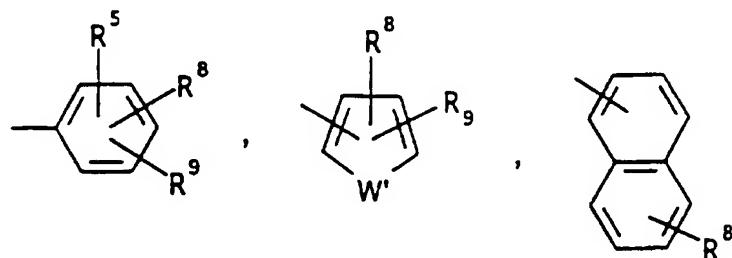
15



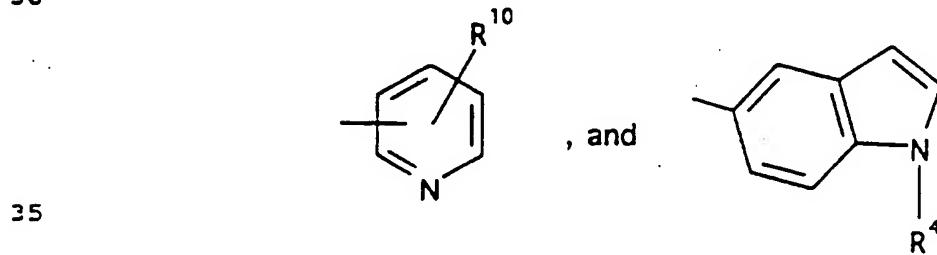
20

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is
 selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are
 as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



30

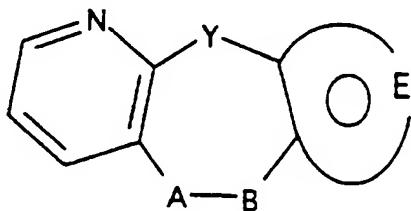


35

-191-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

13. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



35

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms,

5

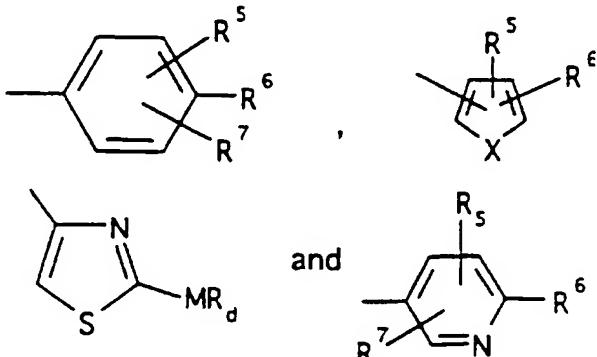
optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy;

10

R^3 is $-COAr$, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

15

20

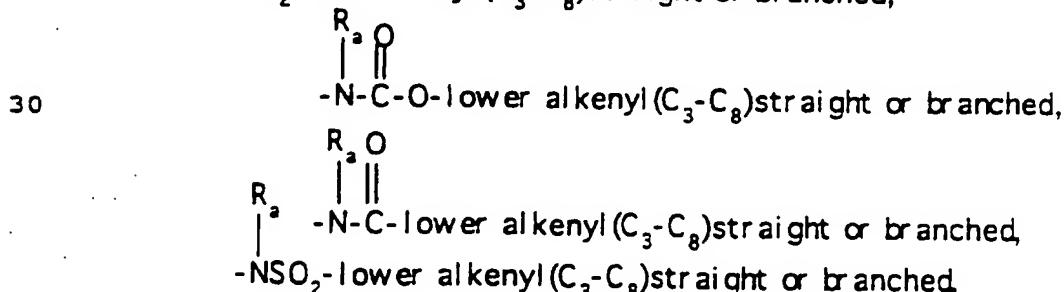
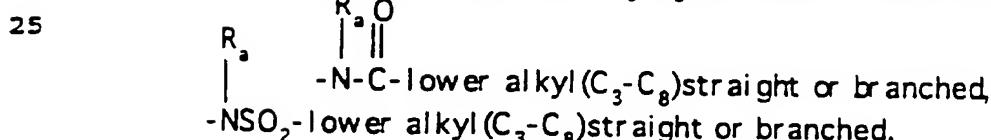
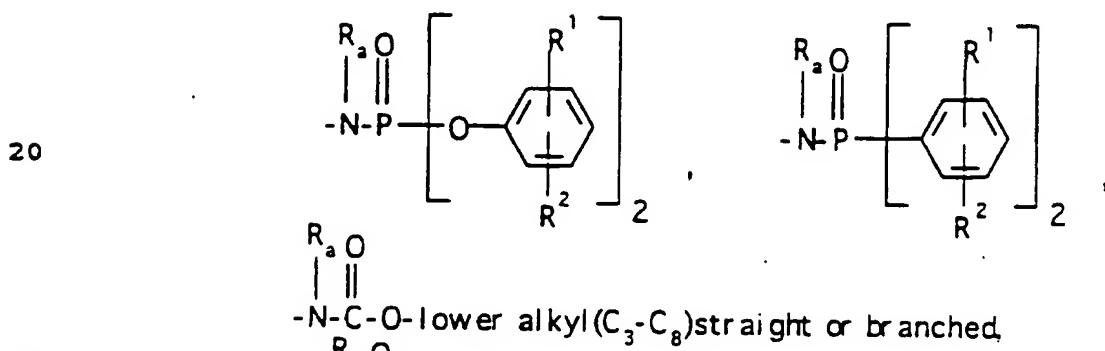
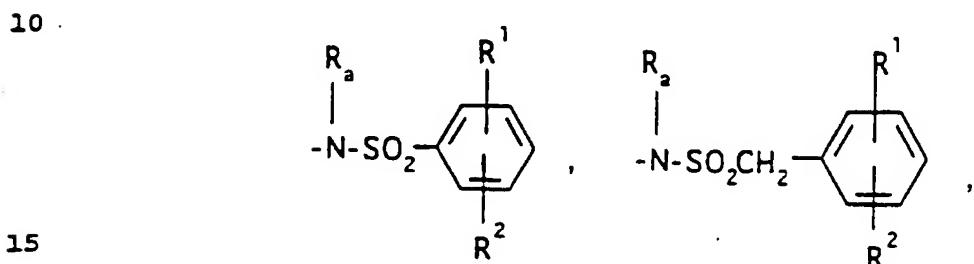
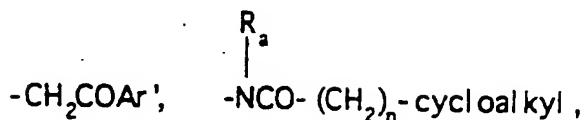
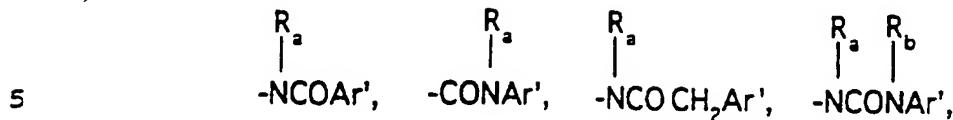


25

30

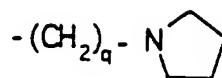
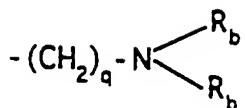
wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -CO-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), R^1 and R^2 are selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

35

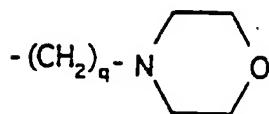
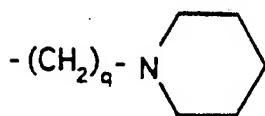


35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



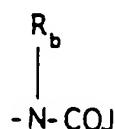
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

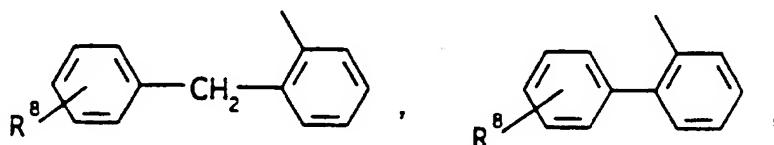
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrafuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

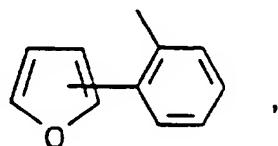
25



30

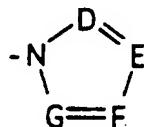


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

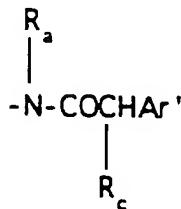


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

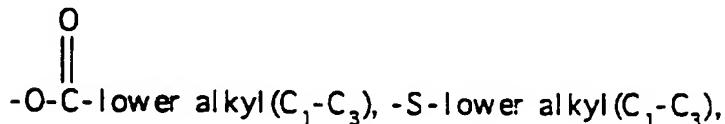
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

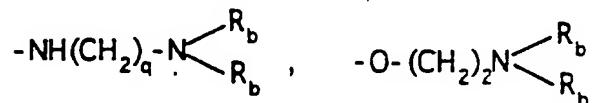
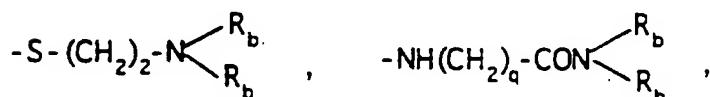


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



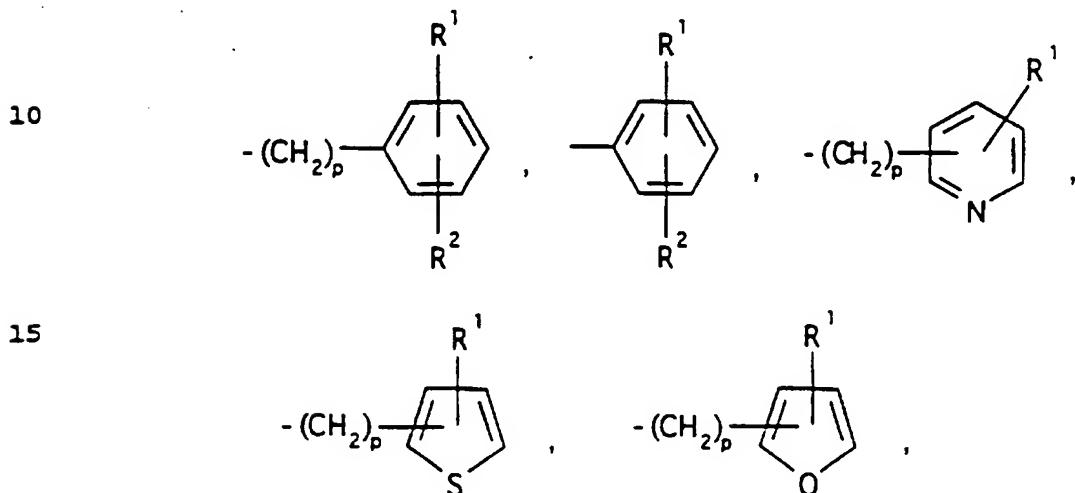
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

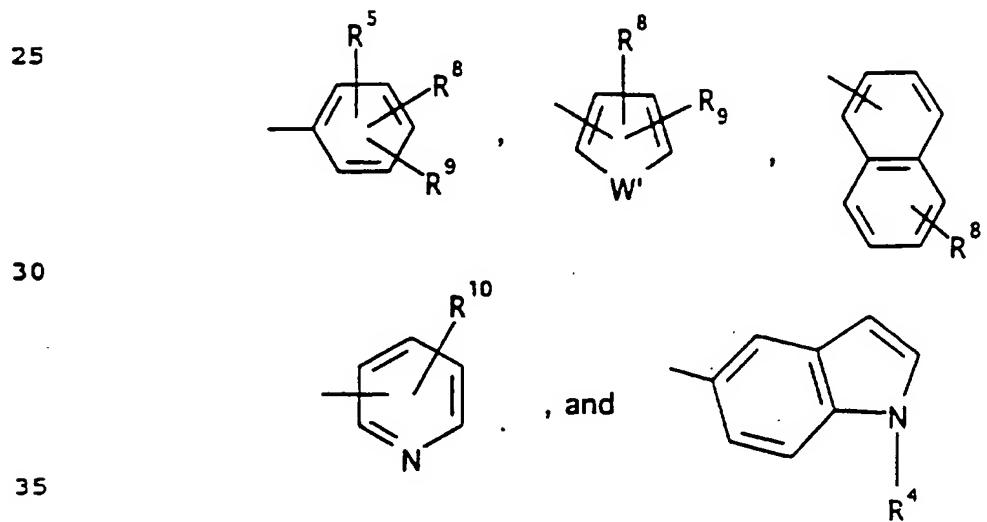
(d) a moiety of the formula:

$-M-R_d$

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆), when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃ and
 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
 moieties:



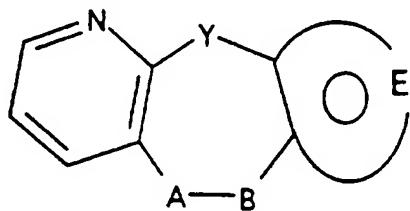
20 wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



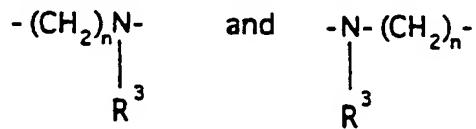
-197-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

14. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:

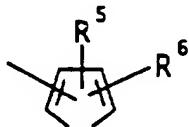
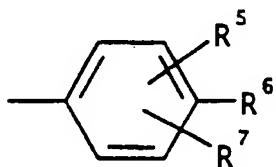


35 represents: an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms.

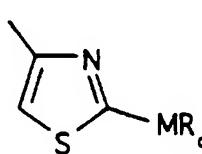
5

optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

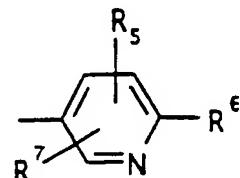
10



15



and



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

25

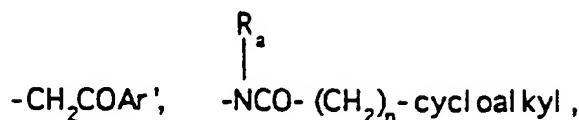
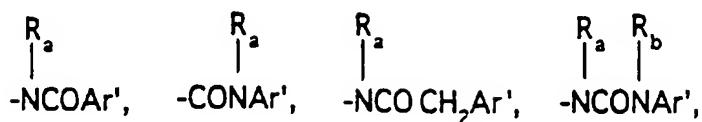
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

30

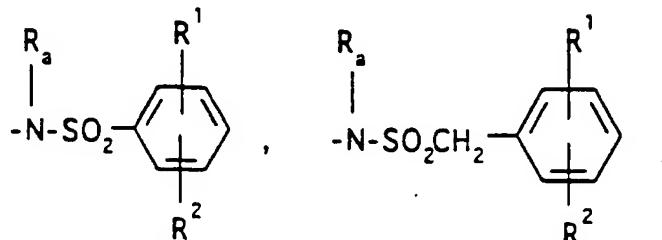
35

-199-

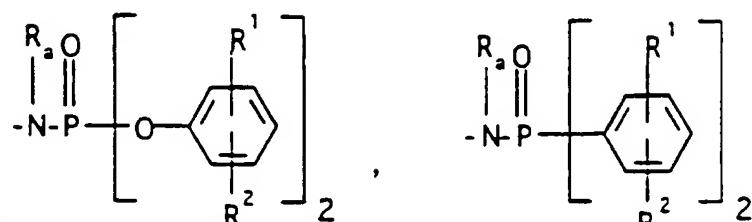
5



10



15



20

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

25

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

30

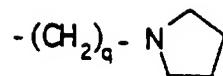
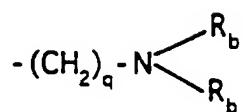
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

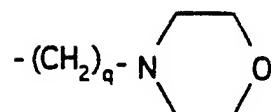
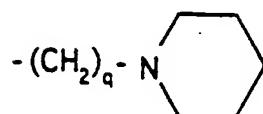
35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



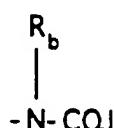
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q$ -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

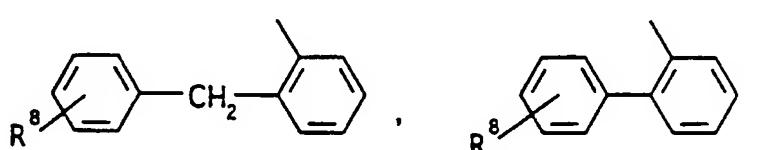
(b) a moiety of the formula:



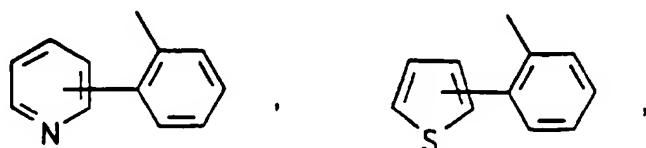
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

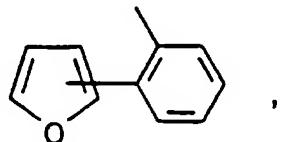
25



30

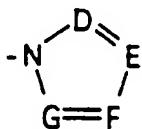


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

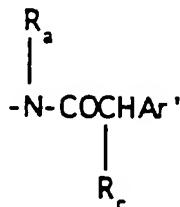
5



10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15 (c) a moiety of the formula:

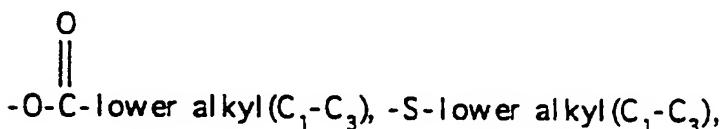
20



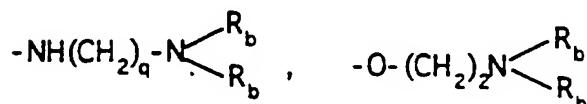
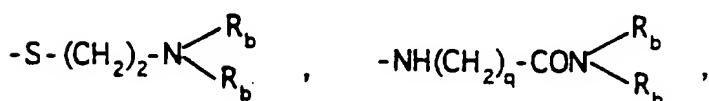
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)

lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), OH,

25



30



35

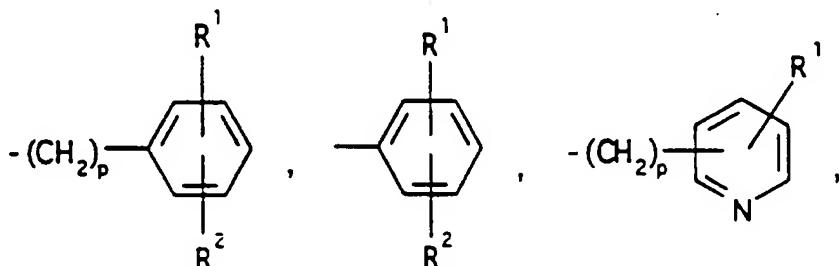
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

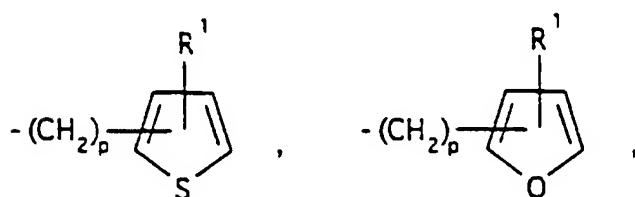
$-M-R_d$

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
 moieties:

10



15

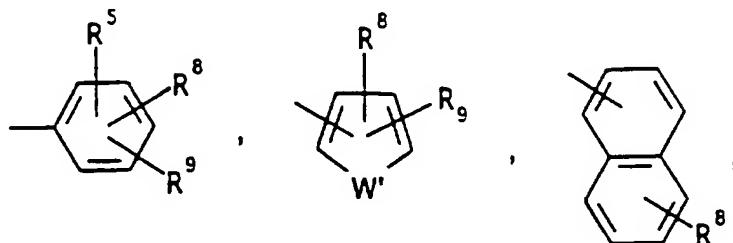


20

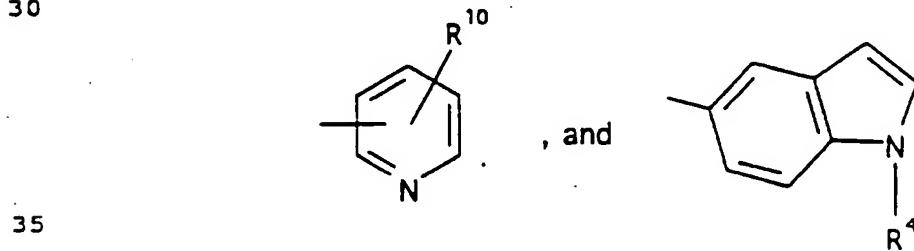
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



30



35

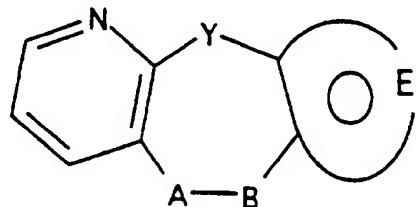
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

10

15

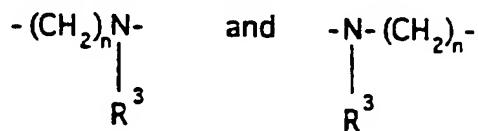
15. A compound selected from those of the formula:

20



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is

25



30

wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:

35



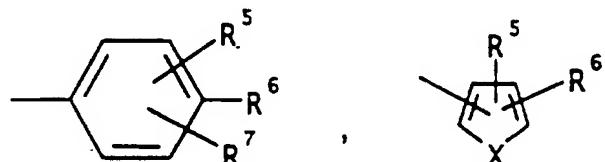
represents: A 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O,

5

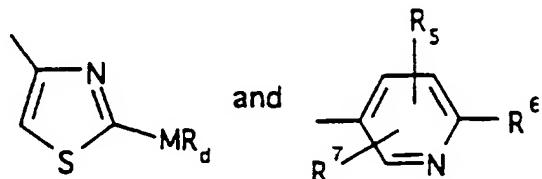
N or S; wherein the 5-membered heterocyclic ring is optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

10

R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



15



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

25

R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

30

35

$$5 \quad \begin{array}{cccc} R_a & R_a & R_a & R_a \quad R_b \\ | & | & | & | \\ -NCOAr', & -CONAr', & -NCOCH_2Ar', & -NCONAr', \end{array}$$

$$-\text{CH}_2\text{COAr}', \quad -\text{NCO}- (\text{CH}_2)_n - \text{cycl oal kyl} ,$$

20

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} R_1 \\ | \\ O-P-N(R_3)_2-O-C_6H_4-C_6H_4-O-P(N(R_3)_2)-O \\ | \\ R_2 \end{array} \right]_2$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} R_1 \\ | \\ O-P-N(R_3)_2-O-C_6H_4-C_6H_4-O-P(N(R_3)_2)-O \\ | \\ R_2 \end{array} \right]_2$$

R_a O
|
||
-N-C-O-lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,
 R_b

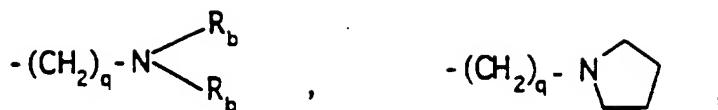
25 R_a R_a O
 | ||
 -N-C-lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) straight or branched,
 -NSO₂-lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R \\ | \\ -N-C-O- \end{array}$ lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

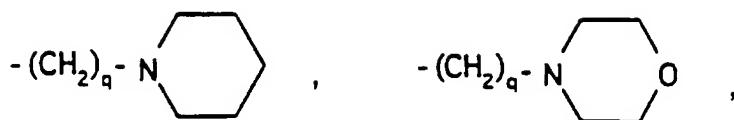
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ R_a - N - C = O \end{array}$
 -N-C-lower alkenyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,
 - NSO_2 -lower alkenyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,

35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

5



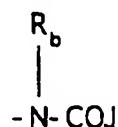
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_1\text{-C}_3\text{)}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$.

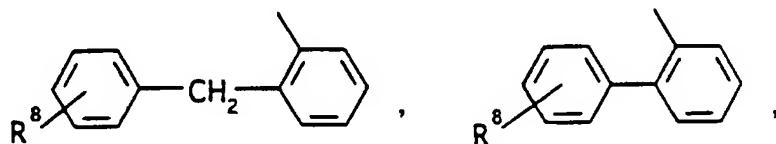
(b) a moiety of the formula:



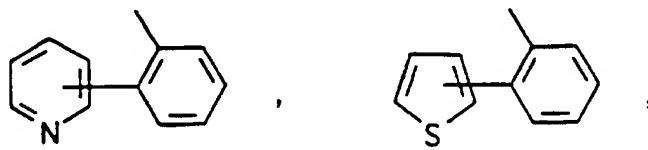
20

wherein J is R_a , lower alkyl($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$) branched or unbranched, $\text{O-lower alkyl(C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)}$ branched or unbranched, $-\text{O-lower alkenyl(C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)}$ branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

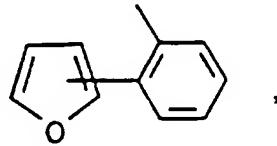
25



30

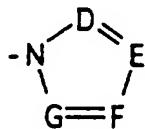


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

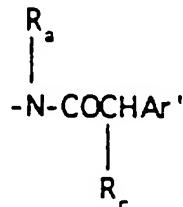
5



10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

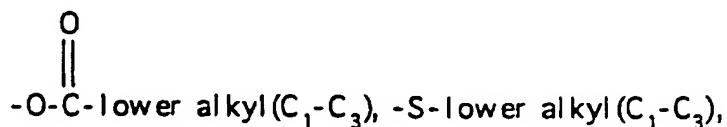
15 (c) a moiety of the formula:

20

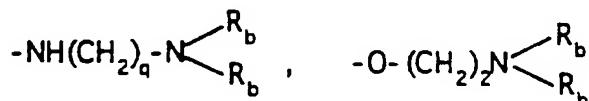
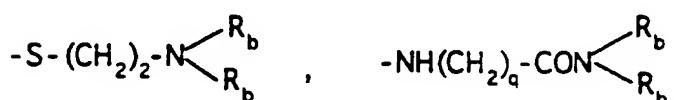


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), OH,

25



30



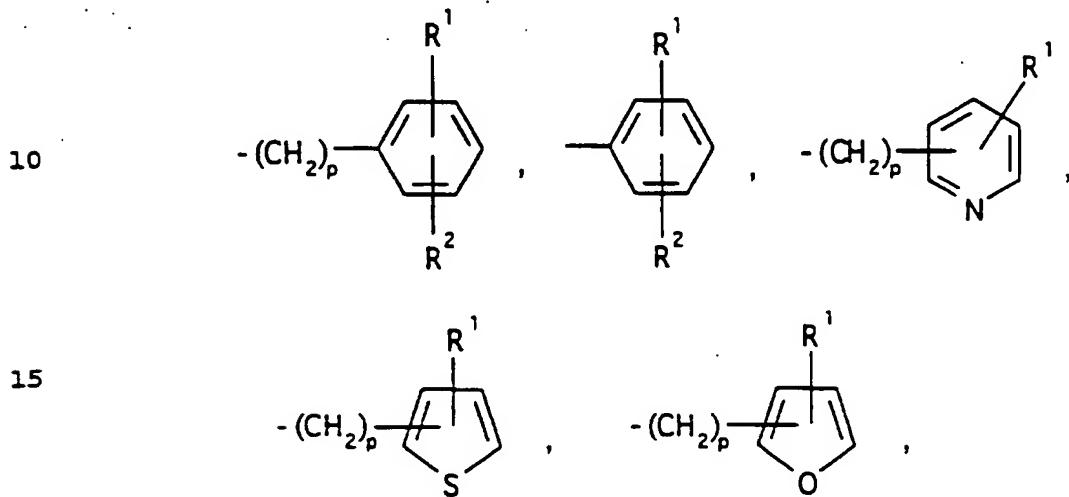
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

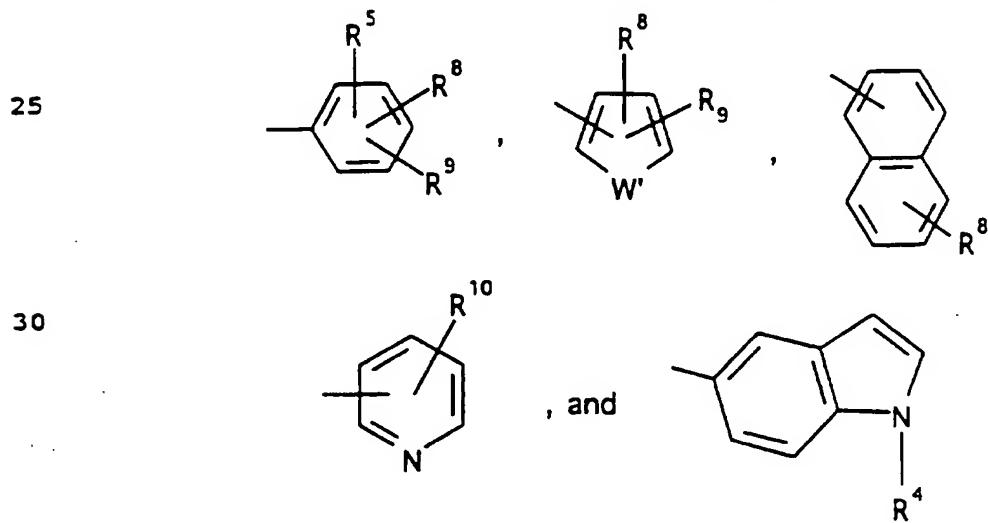
(d) a moiety of the formula:



wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
 5 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
 moieties:



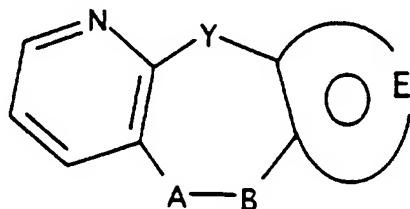
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is
 20 selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are
 as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



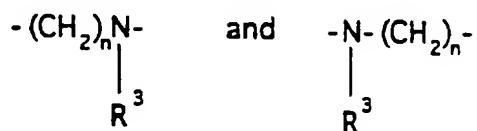
-209-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

16. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



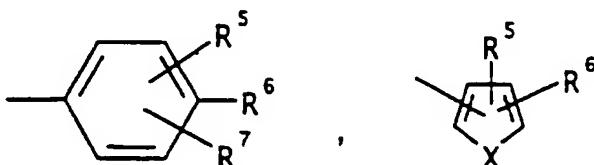
35 represents: A 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms;

wherein the 5-membered heterocyclic ring is optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;

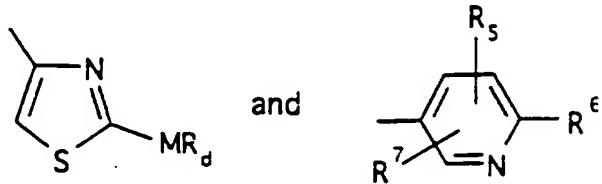
5

R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

10



15



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

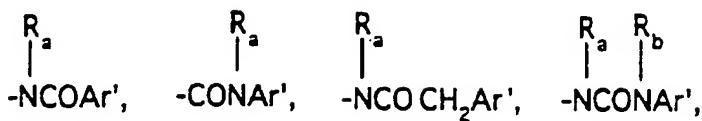
25

R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

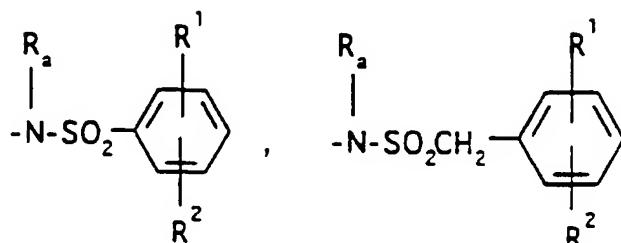
30

35

5

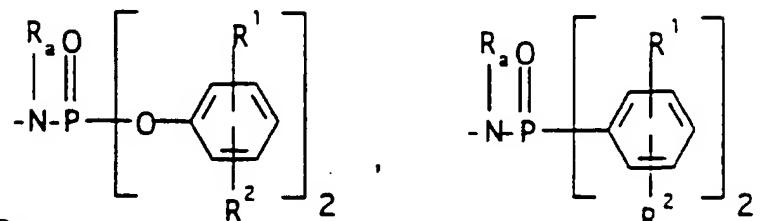


10



15

20



25

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C- \end{array}$ lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched.
 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ O \\ || \\ -NSO_2- \end{array}$ lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched.

30

-N-C-O-lower alkanyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,

35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



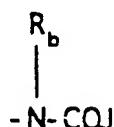
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three. R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

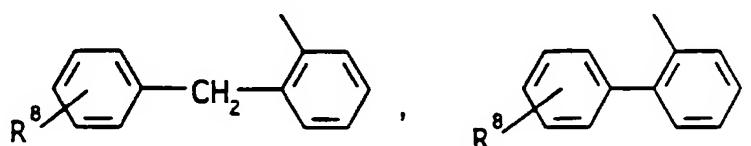
(b) a moiety of the formula:



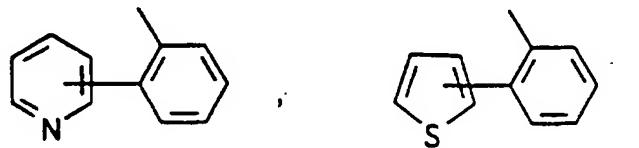
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

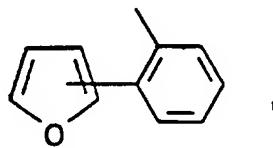
25



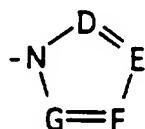
30



35

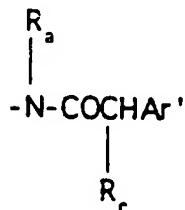


or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

$-\text{O}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-lower alkyl}(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$, $-\text{S}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$),

$-\text{S-}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-N} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \\ \text{R}_b \\ \diagdown \end{array}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{-CON} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \\ \text{R}_b \\ \diagdown \end{array}$,

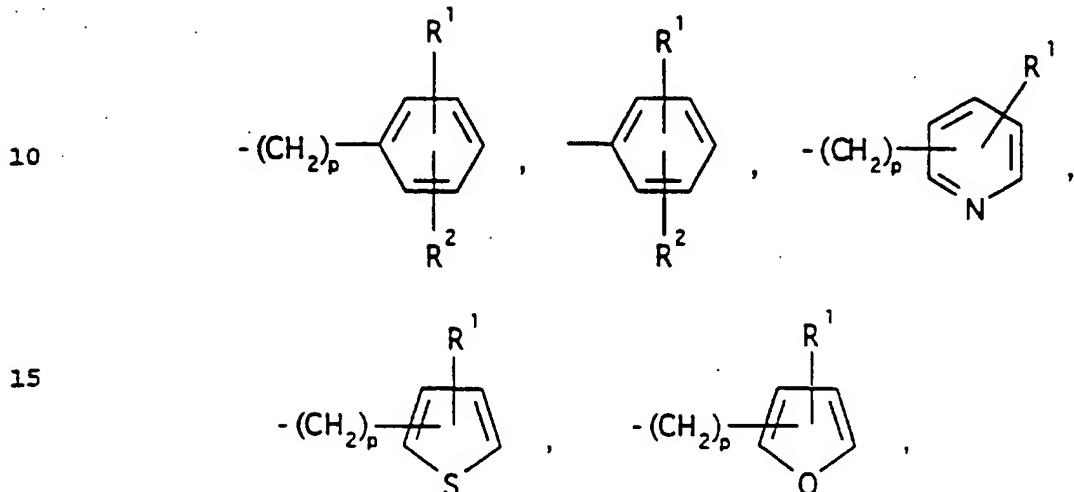
$-\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{-N} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \\ \text{R}_b \\ \diagdown \end{array}$, $-\text{O-}(\text{CH}_2)_z\text{N} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \\ \text{R}_b \\ \diagdown \end{array}$

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

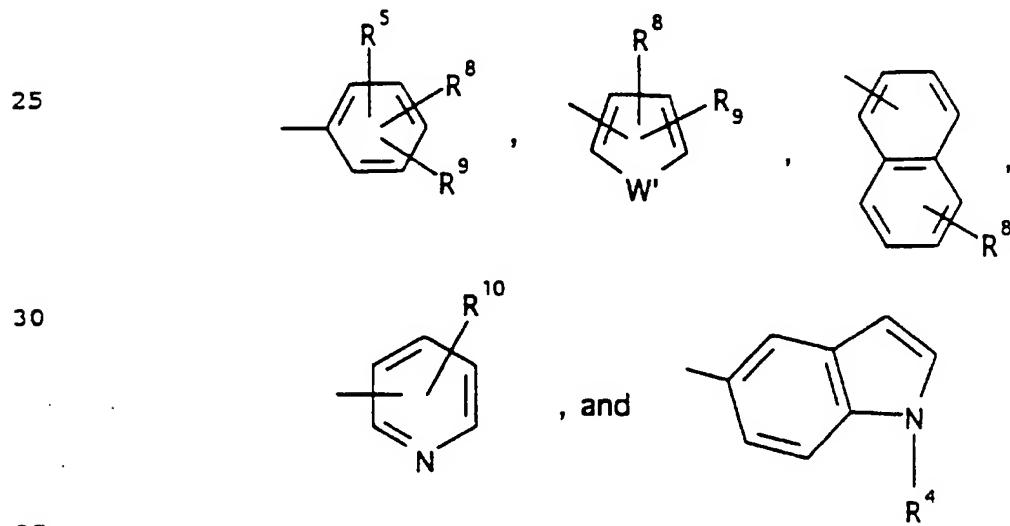
$-\text{M-R}_d$

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
5 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
moieties:



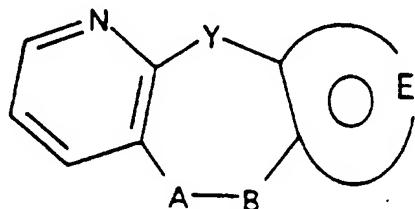
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is
20 selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_d are
as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

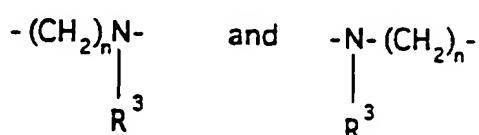


wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

17. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:

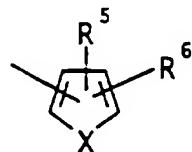
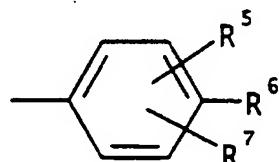


35 represents: A 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with

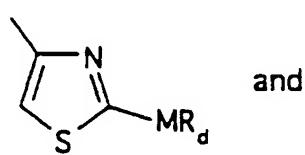
5

either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5-membered heterocyclic ring is optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy; R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

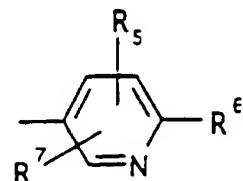
10



15



and



20

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

25

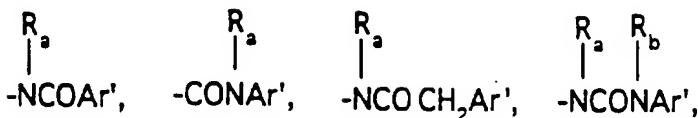
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

25

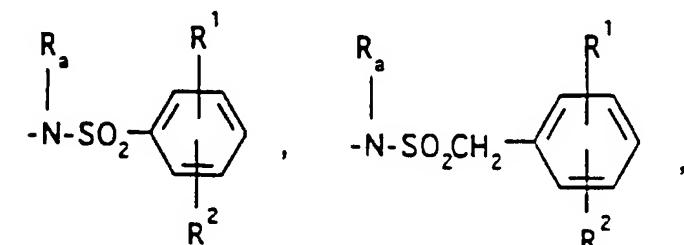
30

35

5

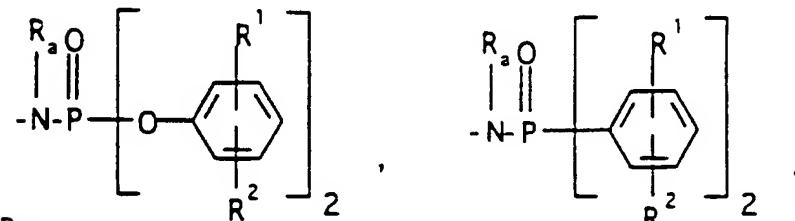


10



15

20



25

R_a | ||
 -N-C- lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,
 - NSO_2 - lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched.

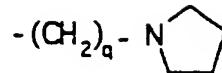
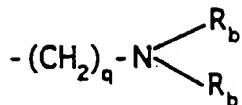
30

-N-C-O-lower alkyl (C_3 - C_8) straight or branched,

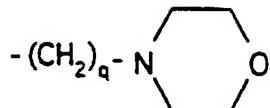
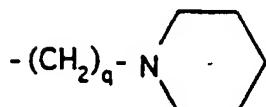
35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



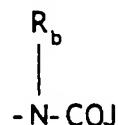
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

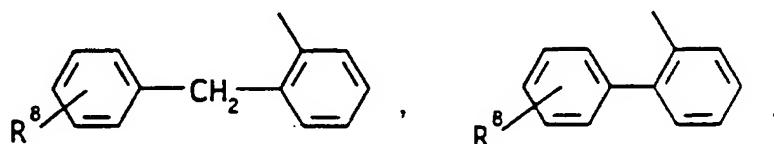
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -C-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

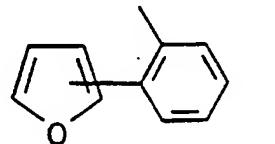
25



30

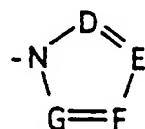


35



5

or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

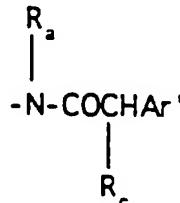


10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

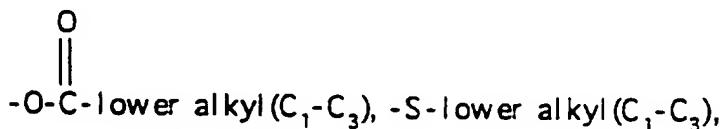
(c) a moiety of the formula:



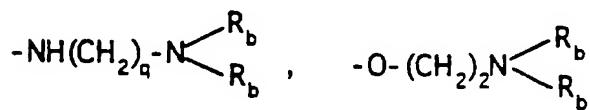
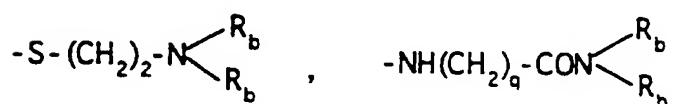
20

wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, $-\text{O-}$ lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

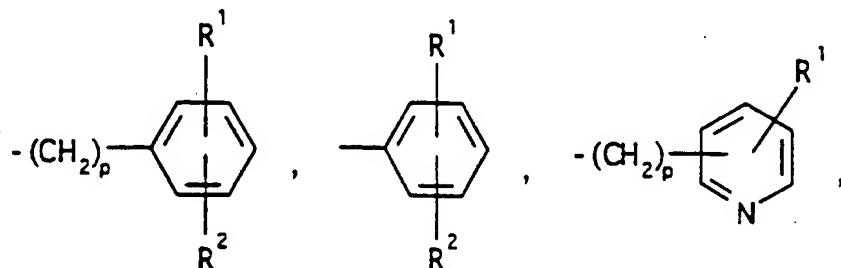
(d) a moiety of the formula:



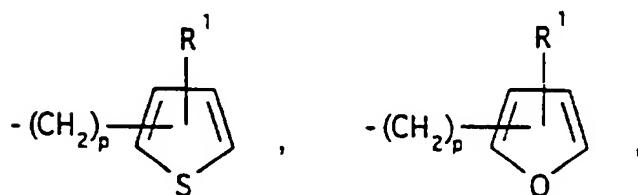
5

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the

10



15

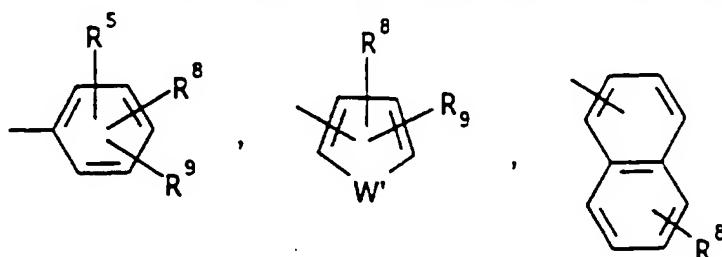


20

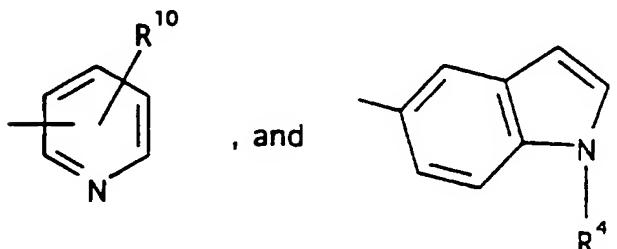
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



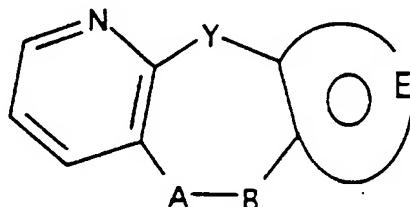
30



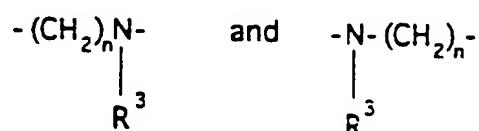
35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

18. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond, A-B is

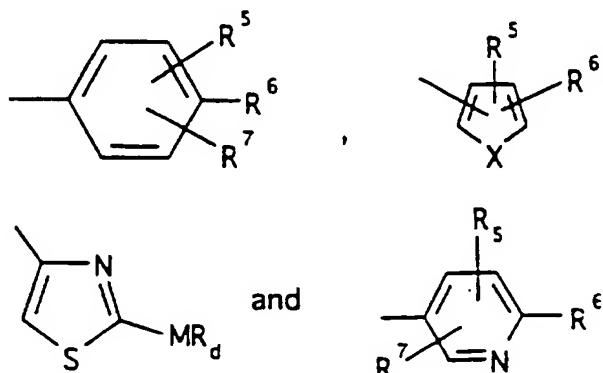


wherein n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



35 represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents

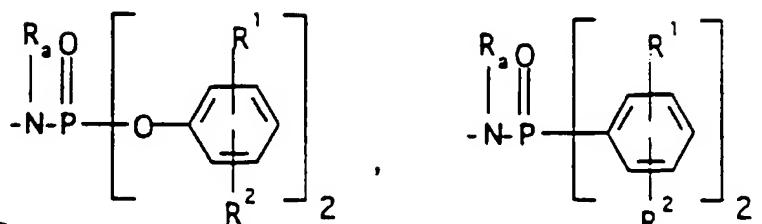
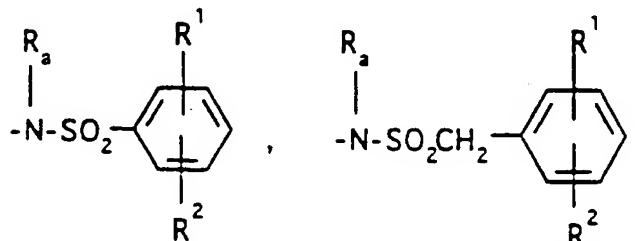
5 selected from (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3) lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N, or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom
 10 together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, halogen, or (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy;
 15 R^3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



20 where X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -CO-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), R^1 and R^2 are selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen; R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:
 25
 30

5 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NCOAr' \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -CONAr' \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NCOCH_2Ar' \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad R_b \\ | \quad | \\ -NCONAr' \end{array}$,

10 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -CH_2COAr' \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NCO-(CH_2)_n-\text{cycloalkyl} \end{array}$,



25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -NSO_2\text{-lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

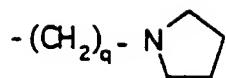
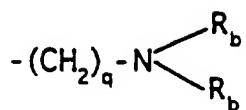
30 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

30 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

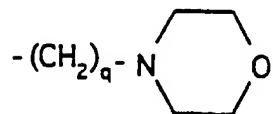
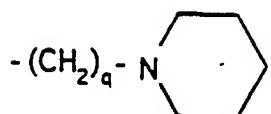
30 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -NSO_2\text{-lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



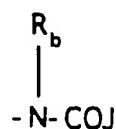
10



$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

15

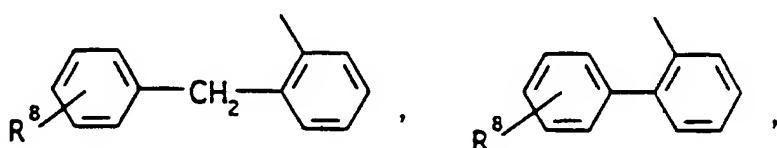
(b) a moiety of the formula:



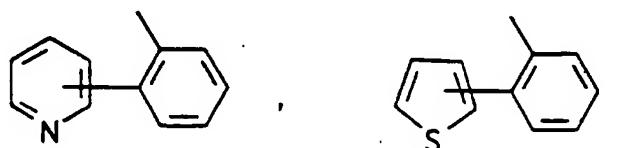
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

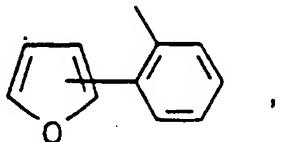
25



30

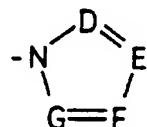


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

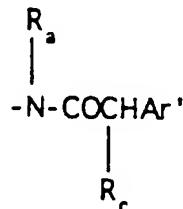


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

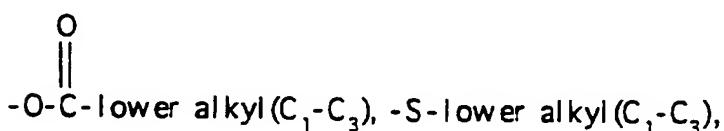
20



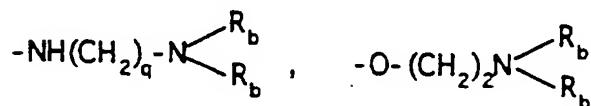
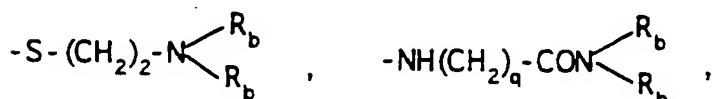
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$

lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



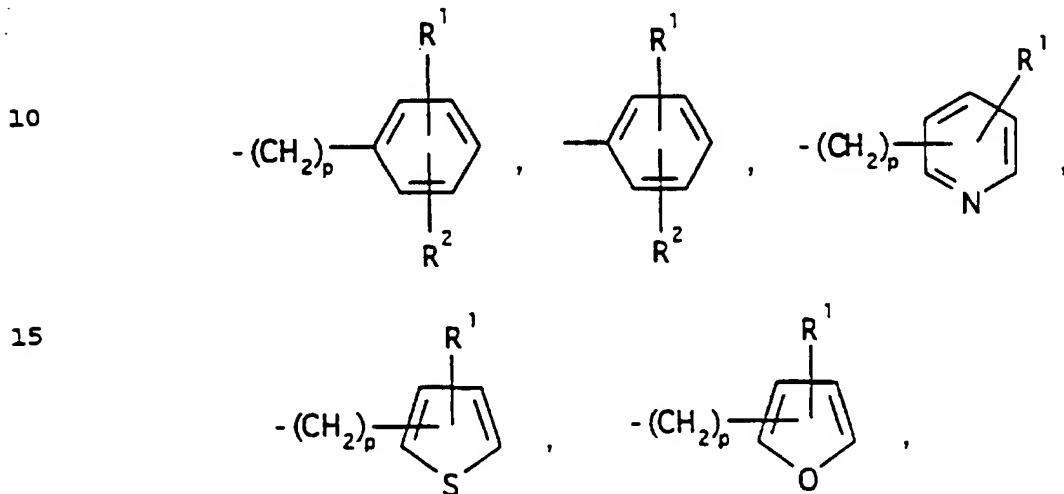
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

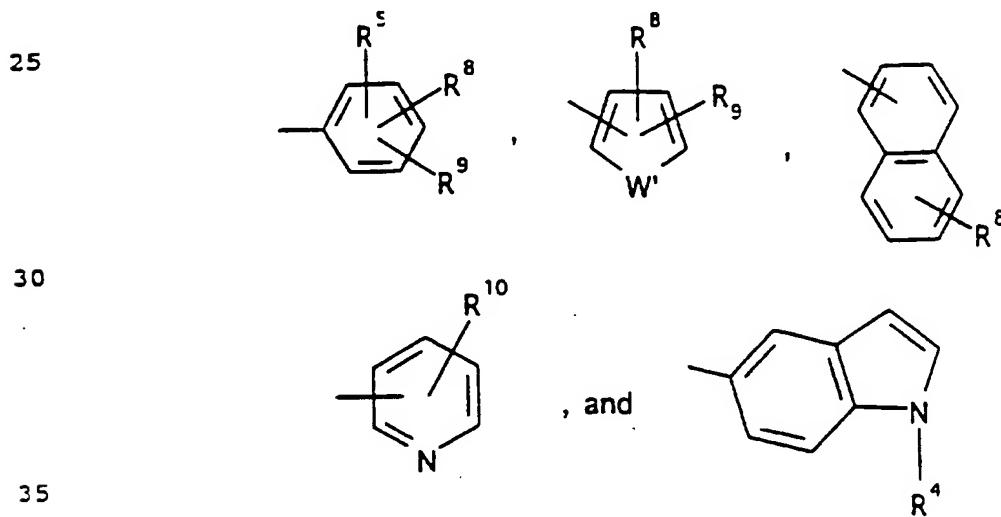
(d) a moiety of the formula:

$-M-R_d$

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
 moieties:

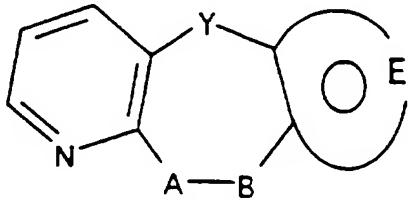


20 wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is
 selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are
 as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

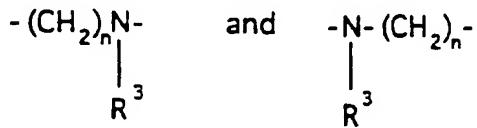


wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

19. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond or -CH₂-, A-B is

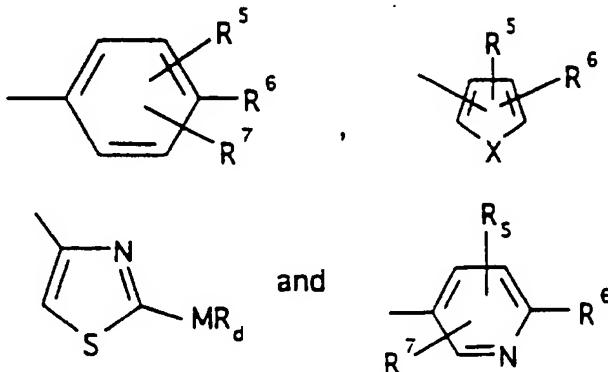


wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:

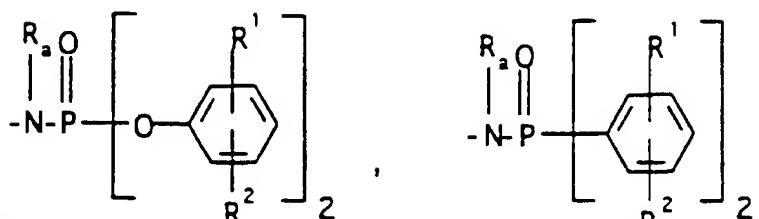
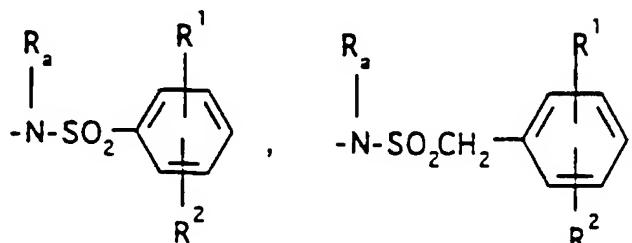
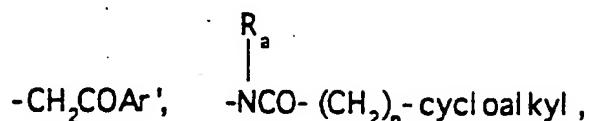
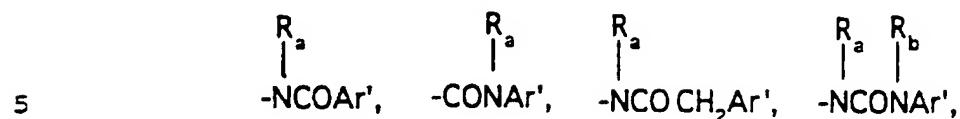


represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-

5 C₃) lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃) lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N, or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom;
10 wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy;
R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃;
R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-
lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower
alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected
from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy
and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the
formulae:



25 $-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C- \end{array}$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

30 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O \end{array}$ -lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C- \end{array}$ -lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

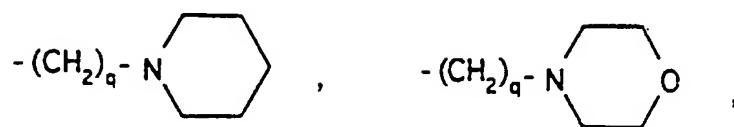
35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C_3-C_6) cycloalkyl,
cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently
selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$.

-230-

5



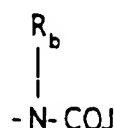
10



$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

15

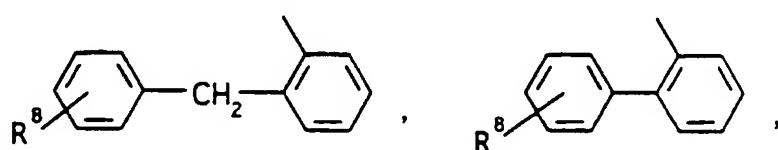
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

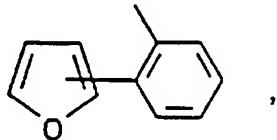
25



30

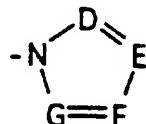


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

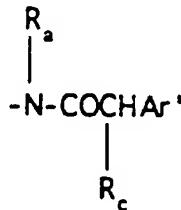


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

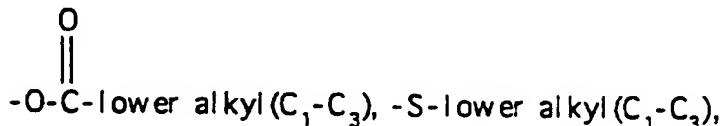
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

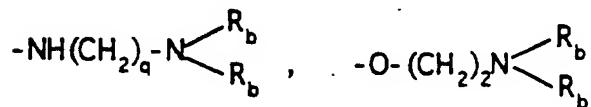
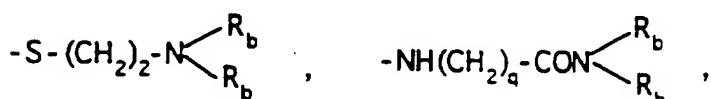


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, $-\text{O-}$ lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



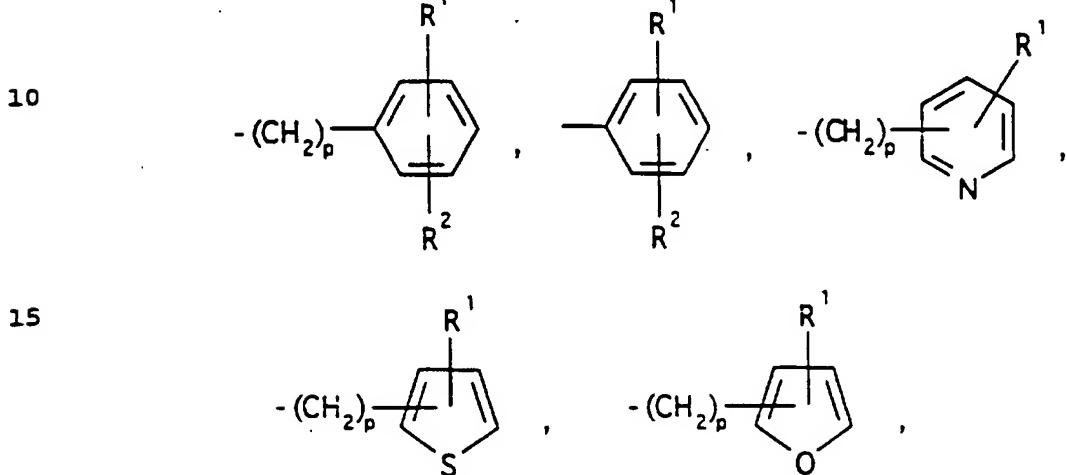
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

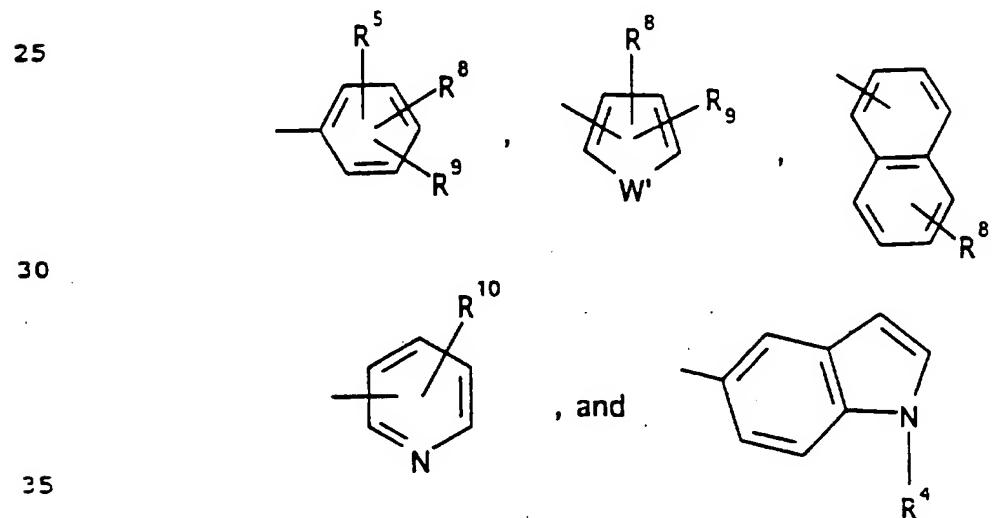
(d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-Rd

wherein Rd is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
 the moiety -M-Rd wherein Rd is selected from the
 moieties:



20 wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



5

10

15

20

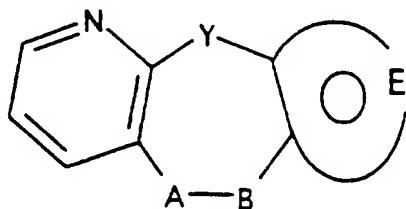
25

30

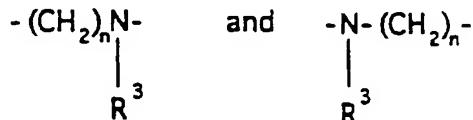
35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

20. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆); A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1; and the moiety:



represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-

5

10

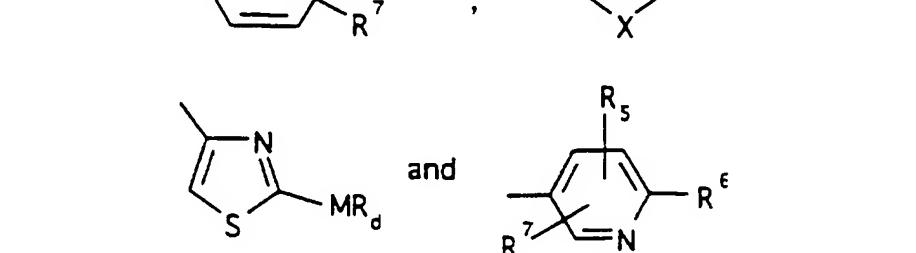
15

20

25

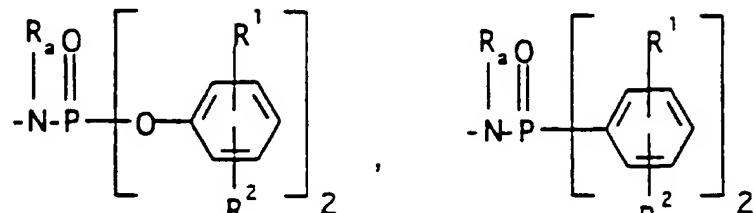
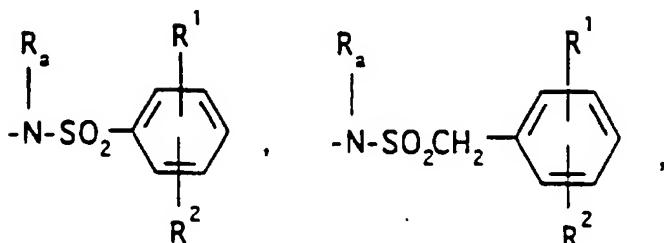
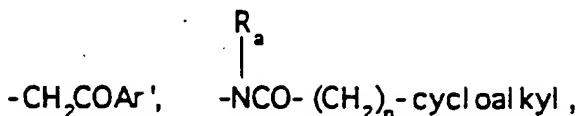
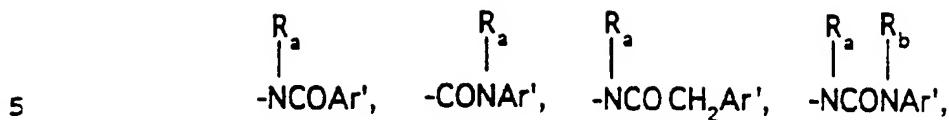
30

C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N, or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy;
 R^3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

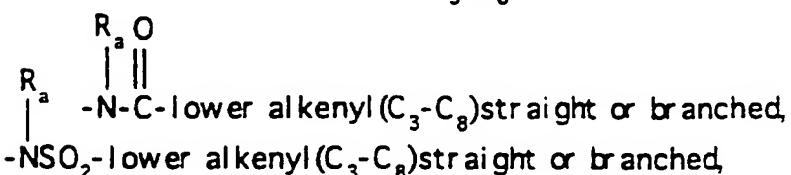
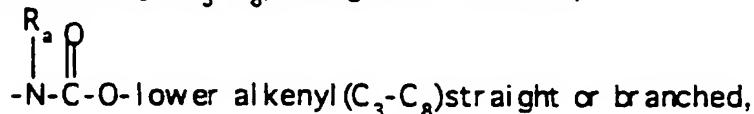
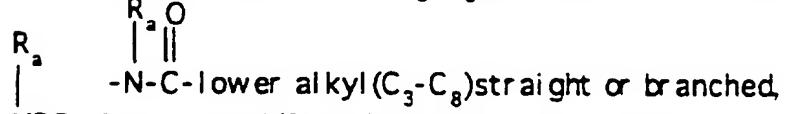


wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCCCH₃; R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -CO-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), R^1 and R^2 are selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

35

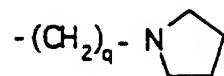
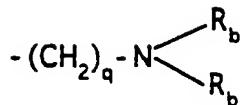


25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

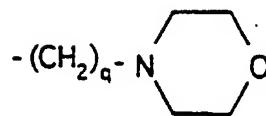
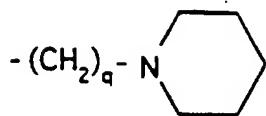


35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



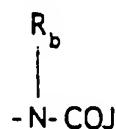
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

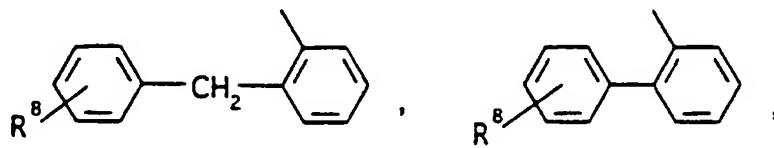
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -C-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydronaphthalene, and the moieties:

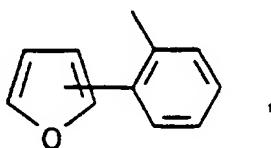
25



30

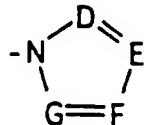


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

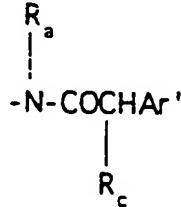
5



10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$) lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$), CHO , ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)-lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

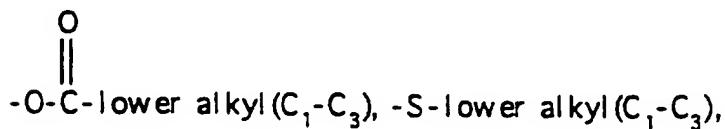


20

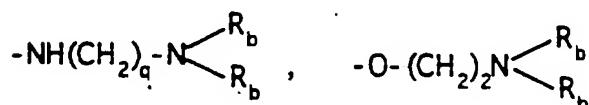
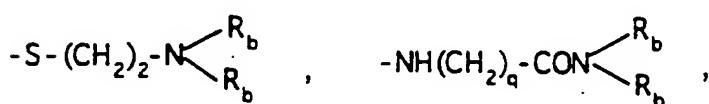
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$)

lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$), OH,

25



30



35

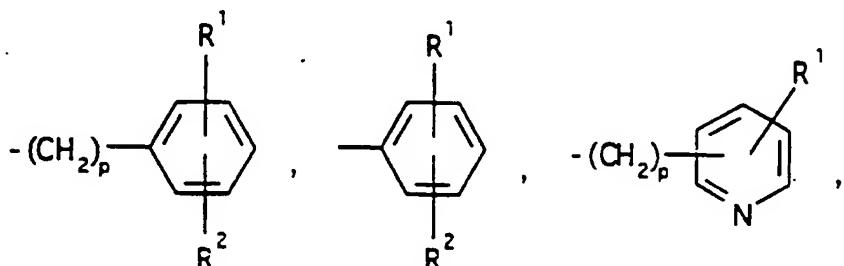
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

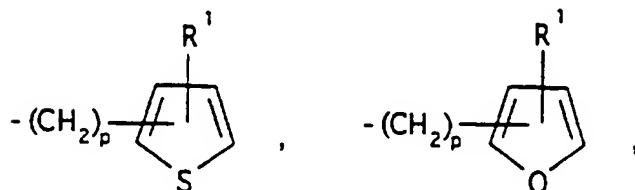
$-M-R_d$

5 wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
the moiety $-M-R_d$ wherein R_d is selected from the
moieties:

10



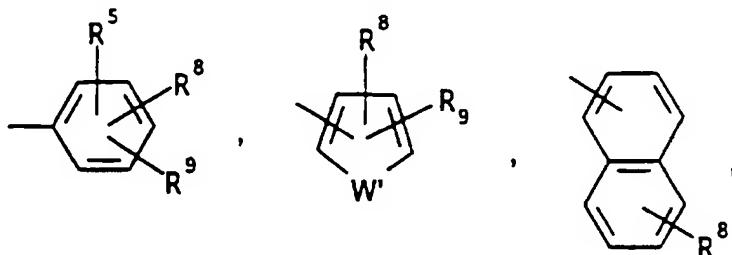
15



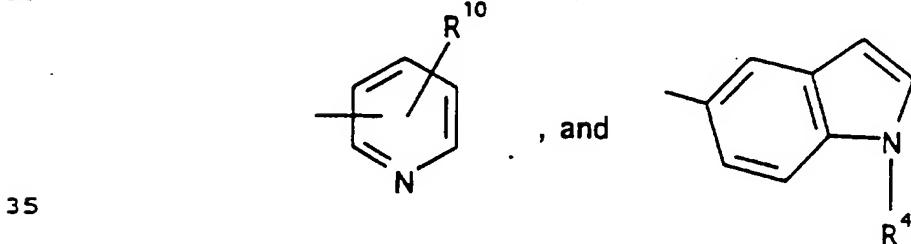
20

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is
selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_d are
as hereinbefore defined;
wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



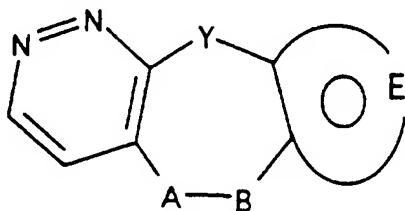
30



35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

21. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond, -CH₂-, C, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆); A-B is

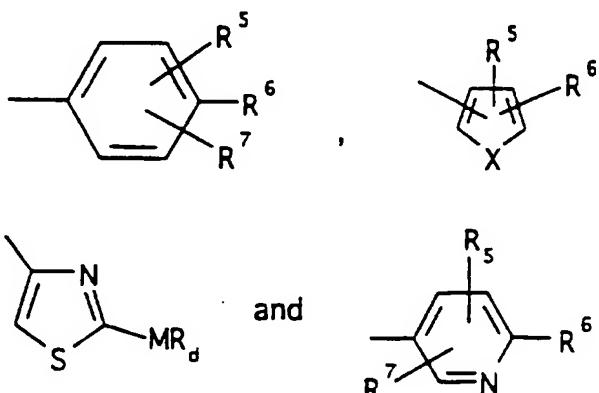


30 wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2; and the moiety:



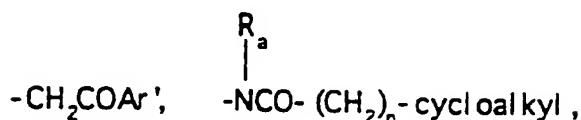
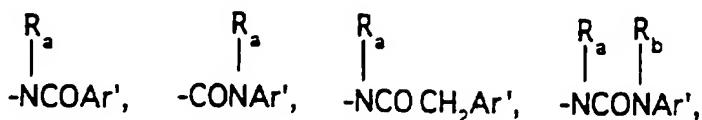
35 represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents

selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N, or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom;
 5 wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy;
 R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the
 10 group consisting of:
 15

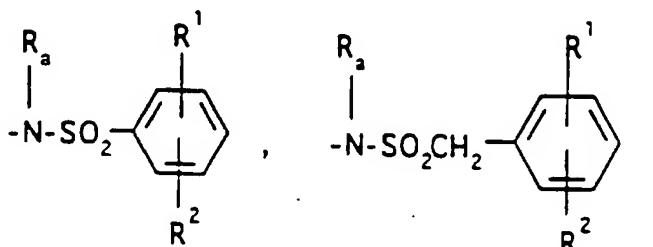


20
 25 wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -CO-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

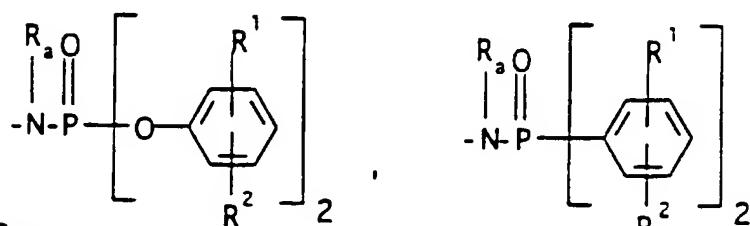
5



10



15



20

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

25

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

30

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ \text{---} \end{array}$

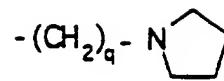
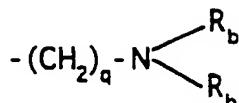
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

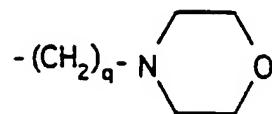
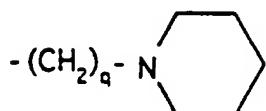
35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



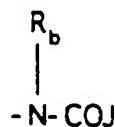
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

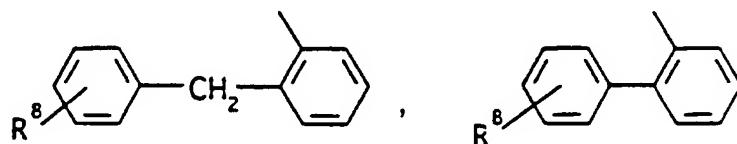
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrcfuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

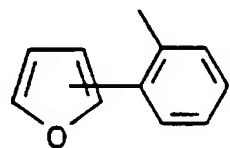
25



30

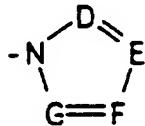


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

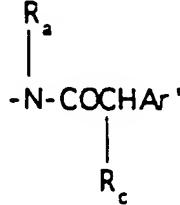


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

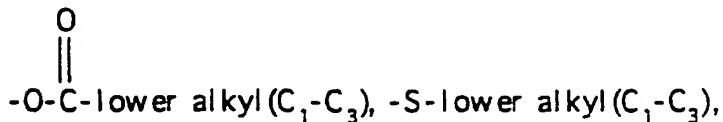
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

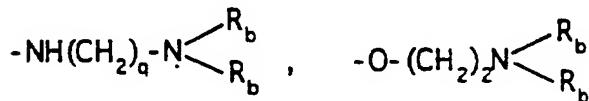
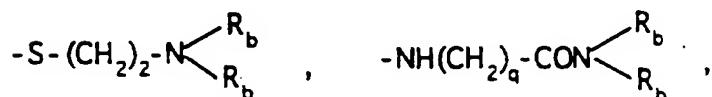


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), OH,

25



30



35

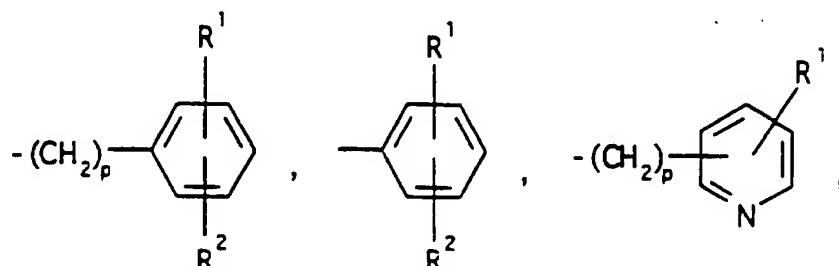
wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

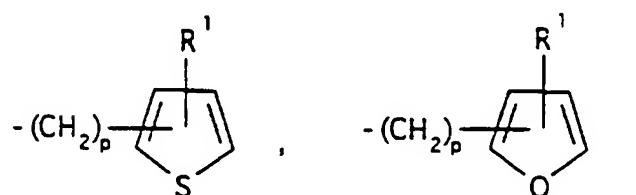
-M-Rd

5 wherein Rd is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and the moiety -M-Rd wherein Rd is selected from the moieties:

10



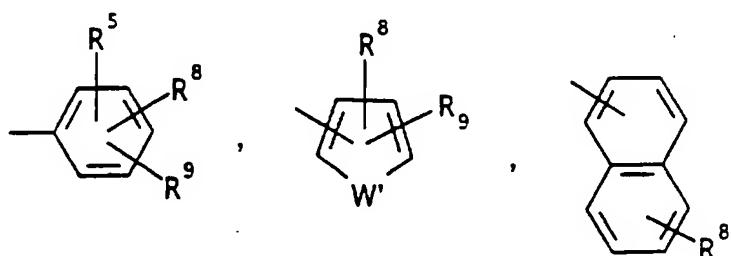
15



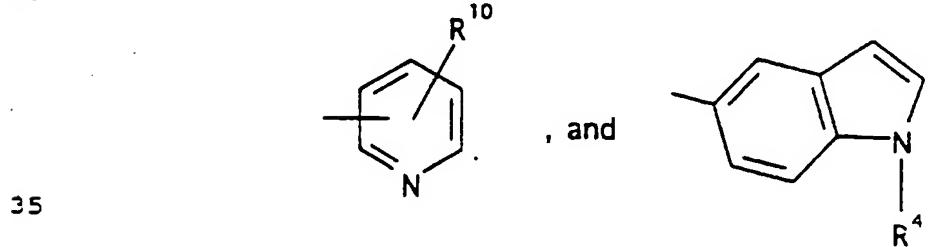
20

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and Rd are as hereinbefore defined; wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25



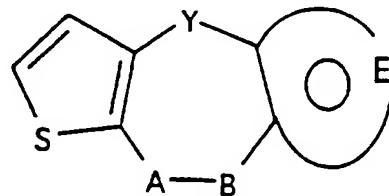
30



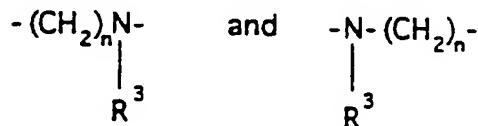
35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

22. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is a bond, or -CH₂-; A-B is



wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that when Y is a bond, n is 2; and the moiety:



represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-

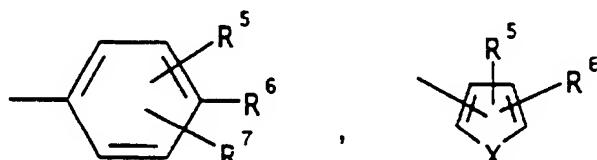
5

C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N, or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; 10 wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy;

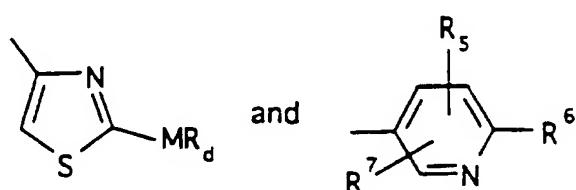
15

R^3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

15



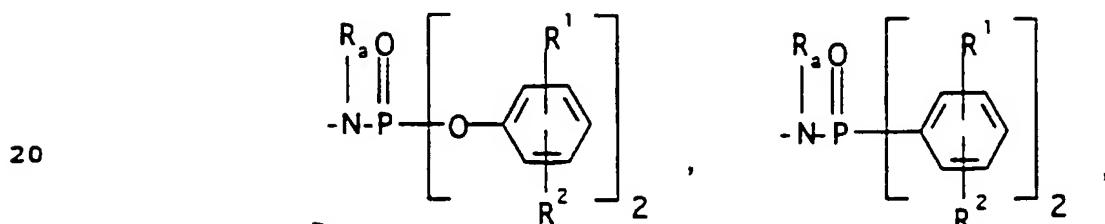
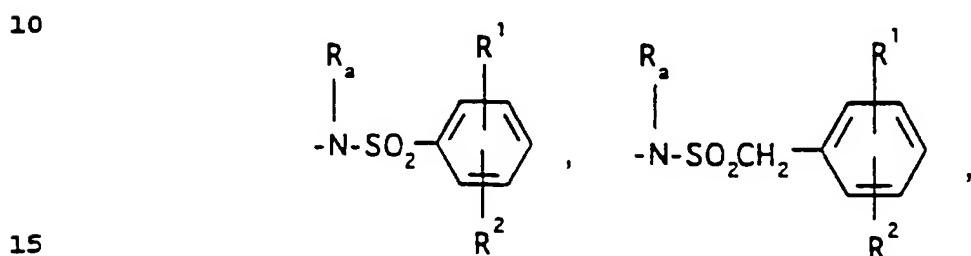
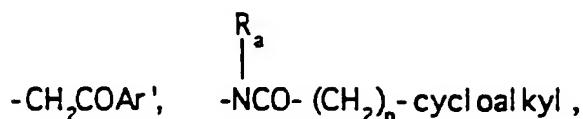
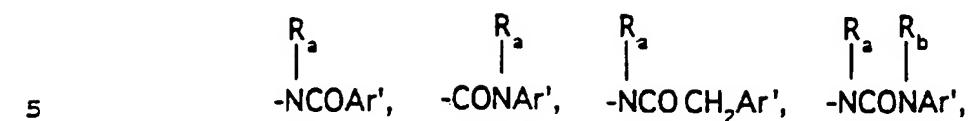
20



25

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃; R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

35



25 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

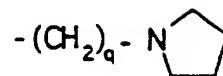
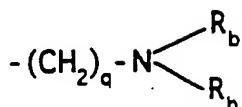
30 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

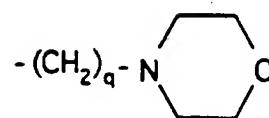
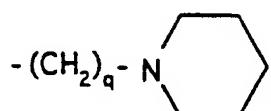
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ || \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

35 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C₃-C₆) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

5



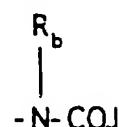
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅.

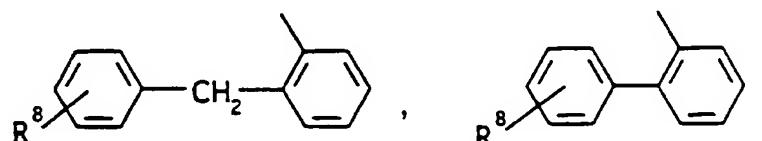
(b) a moiety of the formula:



20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrcfuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

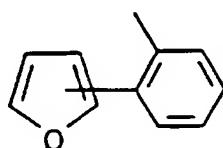
25



30

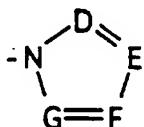


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

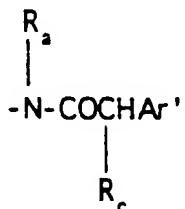


10 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), CHO , $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$ lower alkoxy, $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

(c) a moiety of the formula:

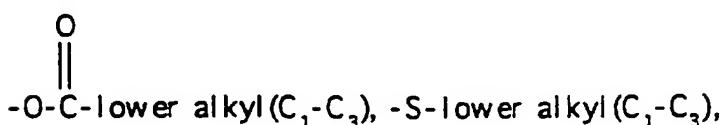
20



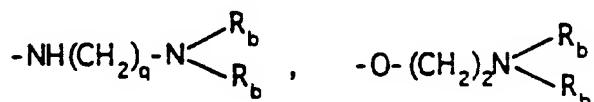
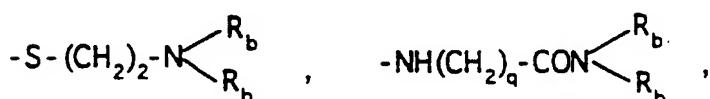
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3)$

lower alkyl, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl($\text{C}_1\text{-}\text{C}_3$), OH,

25



30



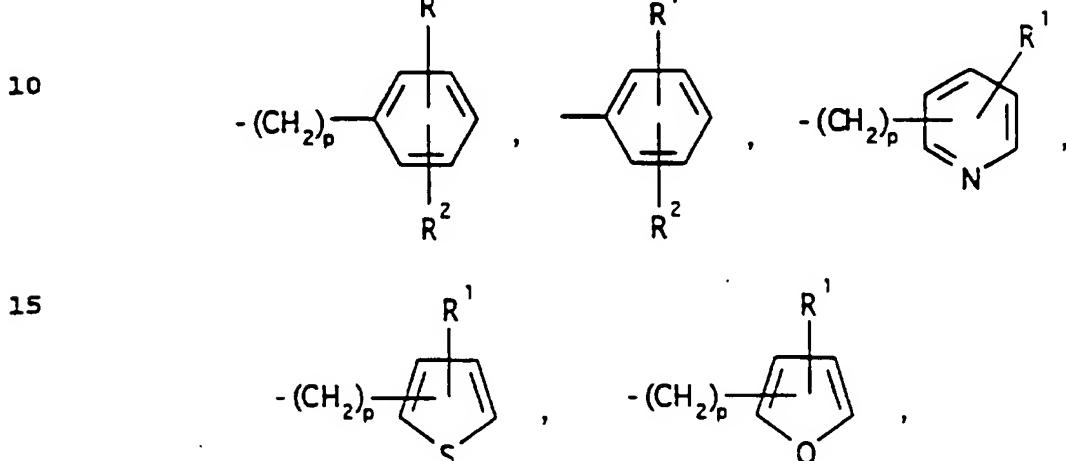
35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

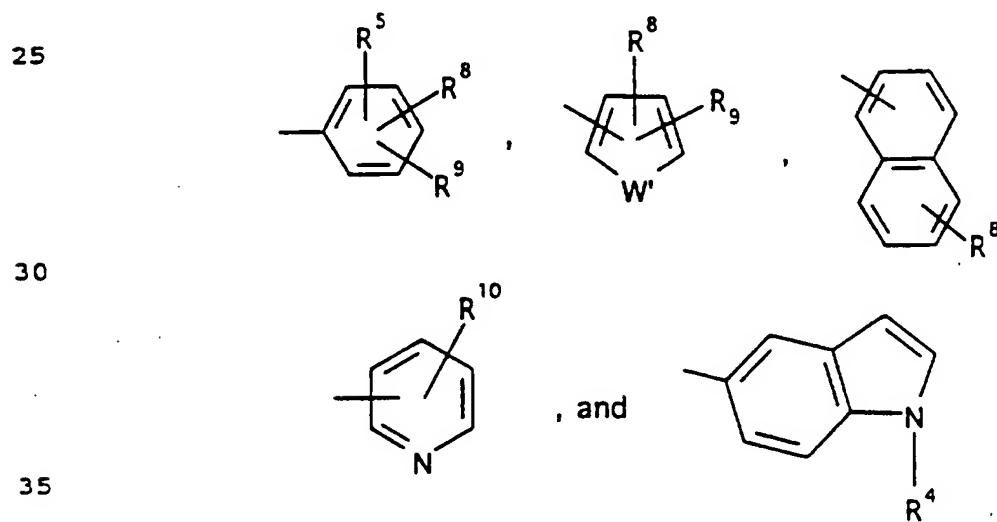
(d) a moiety of the formula:

$-M-R_d$

wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),
 5 - (CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and
 the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the
 moieties:



20 wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_d are as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

23. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide.

24. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

25. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

26. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-chloro-2-fluorobenzamide.

27. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide.

28. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H) carbonyl]phenyl]cyclohexane.

29. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(2H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.

30. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
5
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide.

31. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

10 32. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-chloro-2-fluorobenzamide.

33. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

15 34. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

20 35. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide.

25 36. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide.

30 37. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]thieno[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide.

38. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

35 39. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

40. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-

y1)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide.

5 41. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

10 42. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-chloro-2-fluorobenzamide.

15 43. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbox-
amide.

15 44. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

20 45. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[3,2-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-
carboxamide.

46. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

25 47. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

30 48. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

49. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-
carboxamide.

35 50. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,5-Dihdropyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrido[2,3-b]azepin-6(1H)-
y1)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-car-
boxamide.

5 51. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl])-5-fluoro-2-methyl-
benzamide.

10 52. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carbox-
amide.

15 53. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

20 54. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(6,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[3,2-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl])-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

25 55. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(6,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[3,2-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carbox-
amide.

30 56. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-
[(6,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[3,2-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

35 57. A compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-
[(6,7-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[3,2-b]thieno[2,3-e]azepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

30 58. A pharmaceutical composition useful for
treating diseases characterized by excess renal
reabsorption of water as well as congestive heart
failure, liver cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, central
nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia
in a mammal comprising a suitable pharmaceutical carrier
and an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

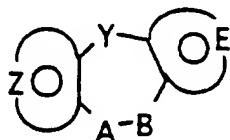
35 59. A method of treating diseases
characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water as
characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water as
well as congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis,
nephrotic syndrome, central nervous system injuries,

lung disease and hyponatremia in a mammal comprising
administering a compound of Claim 1 to said mammal in an
amount effective to alleviate the disease.

5

60. A process for preparing a compound of the
formula:

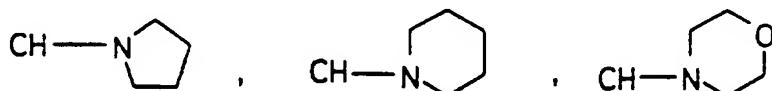
10



|

wherein Y is a bond or a moiety selected from -(CH₂)-,
-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C₁-
C₆), -CHNH₂, -CHN-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -C[N-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₆)]₂,

15



20

-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH(CH₂)_mNH₂; -CHNH(CH₂)_m
-NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH(CH₂)_m-N[lower alkyl(C₁-
C₆)]₂; -CHNH(CH₂)_m-S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -CHNH(CH₂)_m-O-
lower alkyl(C₁-C₆),

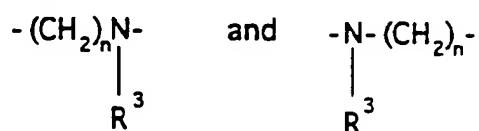
25



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₆), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-
C₆), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

30

A-B is a moiety selected from



35

wherein n is an integer 1 or 2 with the proviso that
when Y is a bond, n is an integer 2;
and the moiety:

5



10

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃) lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, or S; and the moiety:

15



20

25

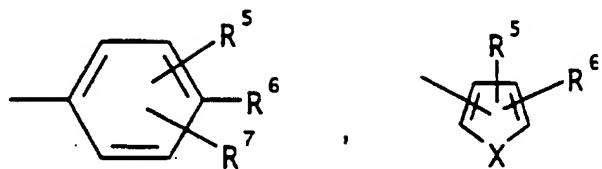
30

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing one or two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy or (C₁-C₃) lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, halogen, or (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy;
R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

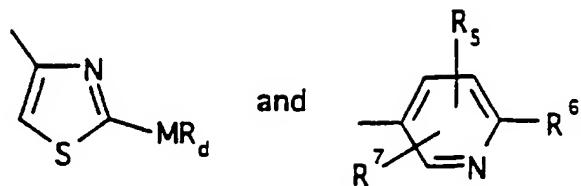
35

-257-

5



10



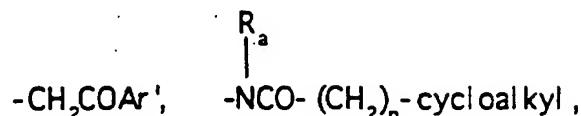
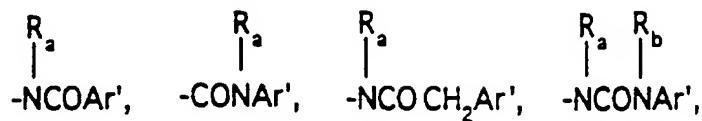
wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH₃ and -NCOCH₃;
 R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-
 15 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 R¹ and R² are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁵ is selected
 20 from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen; R⁶ is selected from (a) moieties of the
 formulae:

25

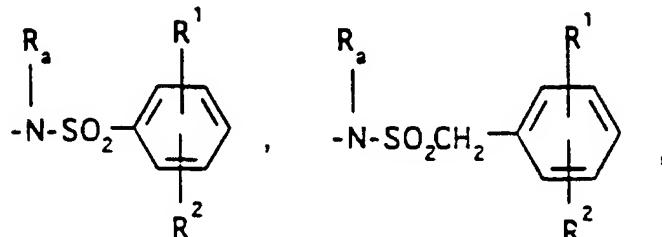
30

35

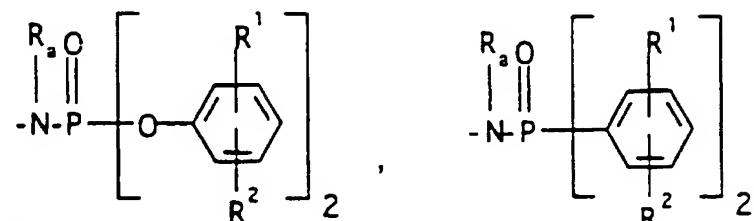
5



10



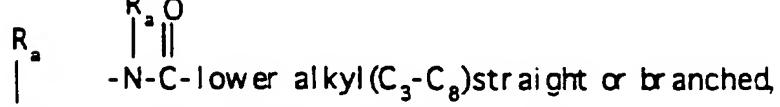
15



20

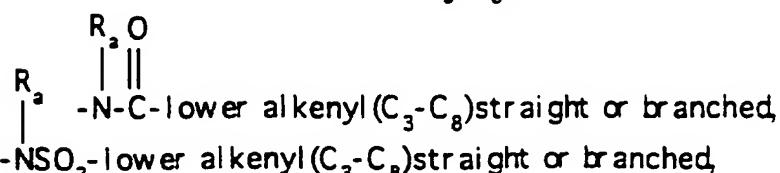
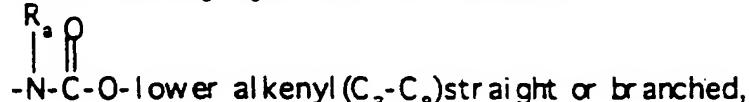
$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

25



$-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

30

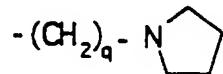
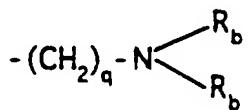


$-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

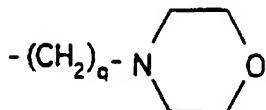
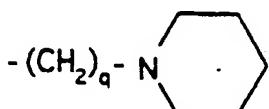
35

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C_3-C_6) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$.

5



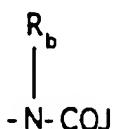
10



15

$-(\text{CH}_2)_q$ -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CH₂CH₂OH, q is one, two, or three, R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅,

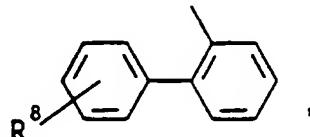
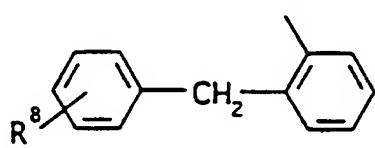
(b) a moiety of the formula:



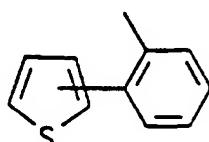
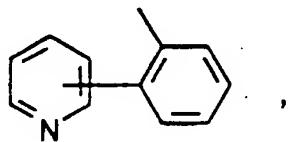
20

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

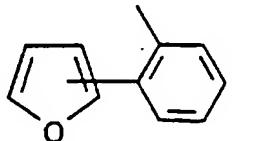
25



30

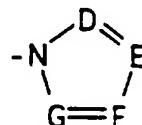


35



or $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$ wherein K' is (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5



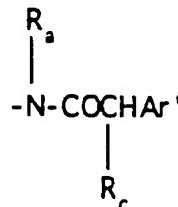
10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)-lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

15

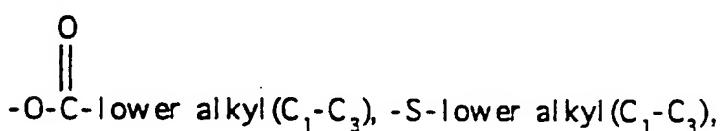
(c) a moiety of the formula:

20

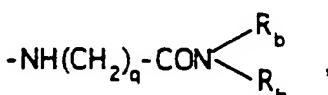
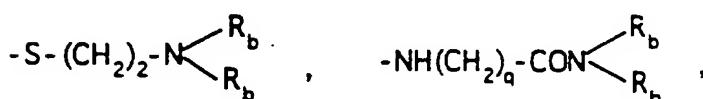


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), OH,

25



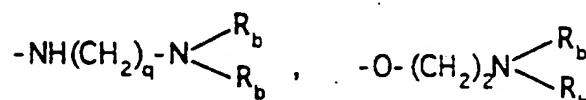
30



35

wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

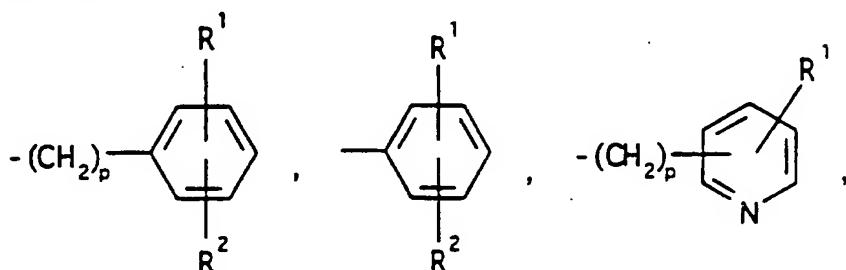
(d) a moiety of the formula:



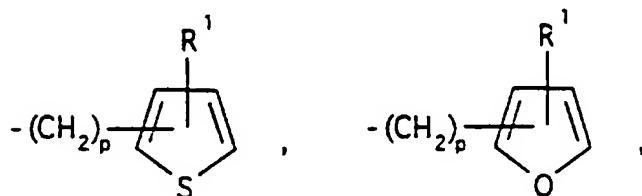
-M-R_d

5 wherein R_d is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆) when M is O, S, NH, NCH₃, and the moiety -M-R_d wherein R_d is selected from the moieties:

10



15

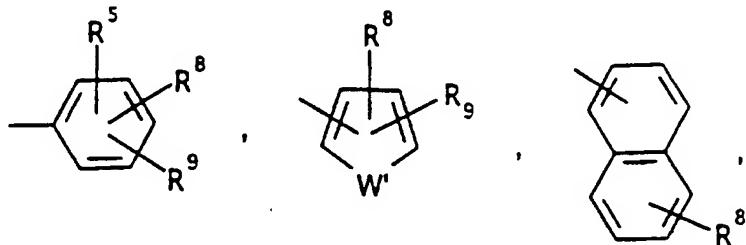


20

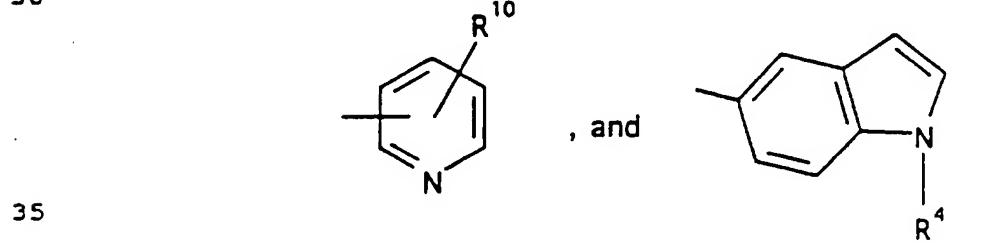
wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH₃; wherein R¹, R² and R_a are as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

25

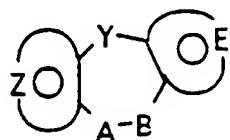


30



35

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and CF₃; R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -OCF₃, -OH, -CN, -S-CF₃, -NO₂, -NH₂, O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and CF₃ and; R¹⁰ is selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N(R_b)(CH₂)-N(R_b)₂; which comprises reacting a compound of the formula:



20

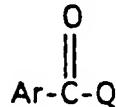
I

wherein A-B is



25

with a compound of the formula:



30

wherein Q is a halogen or an activating group, which results from conversion of an aryl carboxylic acid to a mixed anhydride or from activation with a peptide coupling reagent, to give compounds of the Formula I.

35

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 96/01472

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 C07D495/14 C07D471/14 C07D498/14 A61K31/55

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 C07D A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	EP,A,0 620 216 (FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO) 19 October 1994 cited in the application see meaning of A on page 3, see examples on page 64 ---	1-60
Y	US,A,5 258 510 (OGAWA HIDENORI ET AL) 2 November 1993 cited in the application see meaning of W, columns 3 and 4 ---	1-60
P,Y	EP,A,0 640 592 (AMERICAN CYANAMID CO) 1 March 1995 see the whole document -----	1-60

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

- *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *E* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
- *&* document member of the same patent family

2

Date of the actual completion of the international search

8 May 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

14.06.96

Name and mailing address of the ISA
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+ 31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.
Fax: (+ 31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Steendijk, M

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

National Application No

PCT/US 96/01472

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
EP-A-0620216	19-10-94	AU-B-	5932294	20-10-94
		CA-A-	2121112	14-10-94
		CN-A-	1098406	08-02-95
		HU-A-	70197	28-09-95
		JP-A-	7002800	06-01-95
		ZA-A-	9402325	16-02-95
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
US-A-5258510	02-11-93	JP-A-	4321669	11-11-92
		AU-B-	630284	22-10-92
		AU-B-	7291791	19-12-91
		EP-A-	0450097	09-10-91
		WO-A-	9105549	02-05-91
		JP-A-	4154765	27-05-92
		JP-B-	7076214	16-08-95
		CN-A,B	1051038	01-05-91
		CN-A-	1107146	23-08-95
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
EP-A-0640592	01-03-95	AU-B-	6877694	09-02-95
		CA-A-	2128955	30-01-95
		CN-A-	1106802	16-08-95
		CZ-A-	9401798	15-02-95
		FI-A-	943542	30-01-95
		HU-A-	71548	28-12-95
		JP-A-	7179430	18-07-95
		NO-A-	942817	30-01-95
		PL-A-	304496	06-02-95
		SK-A-	88094	10-05-95
		US-A-	5512563	30-04-96
		ZA-A-	9405604	09-03-95
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----